# AL-BAHER

# CONNECT

## Second Term

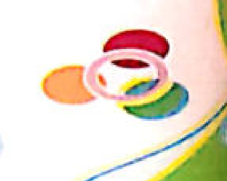
الصف السادس الابتدائي



# Contents







# Reading and Writing Skills

## Reading Skills

مهارات القراءة

### *How to deal with the "Reading Comprehension" Question*

**كيف تتعامل مع سؤال قطعة الفهم**

قطعة الفهم هي عبارة عن فقرة يقوم الطالب بقراءتها ثم يجيب عن بعض الأسئلة:

ثلاثة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد تقيس مدي فهم الطالب لمهارات القراءة التالية:

(تحديد الفكرة العامة في النص - تحديد معاني كلمات أو عبارات في النص - توضيح الفهم لتفاصيل معينة في النص)

ويأتي السؤال بإحدى هذه الصيغ:

- تحديد الفكرة العامة للنص

- This text is about "............................ ".

Or: The (main idea / general idea) of the text is about "............................ ".

Or: The text talks about "............................ ".

- تحديد معاني كلمات أو عبارات في النص

- The underlined word "......................" has the same meaning as "......................" .

Or: The underlined word "......................" is the opposite of the word "......................" .

Or: The underlined word "......................" refers to "......................" .

Or: The underlined word "......................" means "......................" .

- توضيح الفهم لتفاصيل معينة في النص

- سؤالان من الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام تقيس مدي فهم الطالب لمهارات القراءة التالية:

ويأتي السؤال بإحدى هذه الصيغ:

- تقديم استنتاجات منطقية من النص:

- Infer استنتج - Mention اذكر

- تلخيص التفاصيل والأفكار الداعمة في النص:

- Summarize the main idea of the text.

# Writing Skills

## مهارات الكتابة

### 1 *How to write a paragraph:* كيف تكتب فقرة إنشائية

1. اترك مسافة في بداية السطر الأول تقريبًا ١ سم.
2. ابدأ كل جملة بحرف Capital.
3. ضع (.) في نهاية كل جملة.
4. اتبع كل علامات الترقيم.
5. ابدأ جملتك بالفاعل ثم الفعل ونوّع بدايات الجمل.
6. استخدم الزمن المناسب للموضوع.
7. استخدم جمل بسيطة.
8. حسن خطك واترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.

### 2 *How to write an email:* كيف تكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني

From : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل

To : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه

Subject : موضوع الرسالة

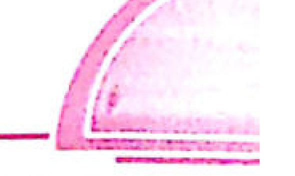
Dear / Hi / Hello اسم المرسل إليه ,
How are you? I'm happy to write this email to you. ← جملة افتتاحية

.................... موضوع الرسالة ....................

- Write back soon and tell me your news.
- Best wishes. ← جملة ختامية

Yours,
اسم المرسل

Send | A | $ | Saved





## 3 How to write a blog: كيف تكتب مدونة:

1. اكتب تاريخ اليوم عند بداية كتابة المدونة.
2. قم بكتابة عنوان مناسب لموضوع المدونة.
3. صف الأماكن والأحداث التي مرت عليك .
4. صف ما شعرت به خلال اليوم.
5. اكتب بعض الضمائر الشخصية مثل (I / Me).
6. استخدم بعض الصور لتوضيح الفكرة.
7. اكتب رأيك في الموضوع الذي تتحدث عنه باستخدام (I think that) / (In my opinion).

## 4 How to write a diary entry: كيف تكتب مذكرة - يوميات:

| | |
|---|---|
| 1) Write the date. | اكتب التاريخ. |
| 2) Start with "Dear Diary". | ابدأ بـ (Dear Diary). |
| 3) Write about how you felt. | اكتب كيف كان شعورك. |
| 4) Use informal language. | استخدام لغة غير رسمية. |
| 5) Use personal pronouns as "I - me" | استخدام ضمائر شخصية مثل (I - me). |
| 6) Describe the (places - events). | صف (الأماكن والأحداث). |

## 5 How to write a text message: كيف تكتب رسالة نصية:

Drear................., — عزيزي ...............،

I want to.................

................................ موضوع الرسالة ................................

What do you think? — ماذا تعتقد؟

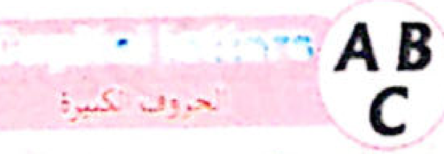
I hope you like my ideas! — أتمنى أن تعجبك أفكاري!

(Your name) — (اسمك)

................. ..........

# Punctuation Marks

علامات الترقيم



يوضع في بداية الجملة / أيام الأسبوع / الشهور / اللغات / الجنسيات / أسماء الأشخاص / [illegible] الشهيرة.

1. Ali is from Egypt.
2. I visited the Egyptian Museum in April.
3. Today is Saturday.
4. I am Egyptian and I speak Arabic.



يوضع في نهاية الجملة.

1. She goes to the club every day.
2. I don't like fish.



يوضع في نهاية السؤال.

1. Where are you born?
2. Do you like English?





يوضع في نهاية العبارات أو الجمل التي تعبر عن الترحيب أو التعجب.

- Hi!
- Wow!





يوضع قبل (s) الملكية.

1. Shahd's dress is red.

يوضع في الاختصارات.

2. I'm a student.

## Comma

الفصلة السفلى



يوضع عند كتابة قائمة بالأشياء أو العبارات.

1. I like reading, swimming, and tennis.

يوضع بعد (Yes / No).

2. Yes, of course.

يوضع قبل (but).

3. I like reading, but I don't like art.

يوضع قبل (please) إذا جاءت في نهاية الجملة.

4. Can I have some milk, please?

# Unit 7

# Amazing artifacts

**In this unit, the students will ...**

- listen and read about artifacts in the Museum of Ancient History.
- listen, read, research, and write about important ancient artifacts.
- listen to a presentation about Ancient Egyptian metals.
- use the past simple.
- do a quiz about Ancient Egyptian artifacts.
- read about animals in Ancient Egypt.
- use prepositions of place.
- say words with the sound /er/.
- write a fact file about a metal or material in Ancient Egypt.
- research and write display boards for artifacts from Ancient Egypt.

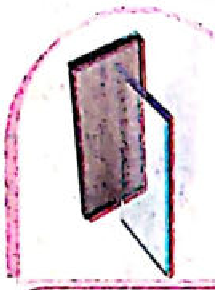
# Lesson (1) A VISIT TO THE MUSEUM

استمع وقل.

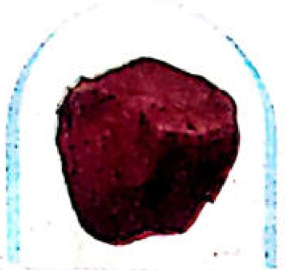
## Materials مواد خام




granite
جرانيت



glass
زجاج



clay
صلصال / فخار



gold
ذهب

## Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| artifacts | قطع أثرية (مصنوعات يدوية) | durable | متين |
| preserve | يحفظ | fascinating | مذهل / خلاب |

## Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Ancient Egyptians | المصريون القدماء | a visit | زيارة |
| museum | متحف | materials | مواد خام |
| guide | يرشد / مرشد | papyrus | ورق البردي |
| parents | الوالدان | pot | إناء |
| climate | مناخ | dry | جاف |
| valuable | ذو قيمة / قيِّم | cold | بارد |
| today | اليوم | students | طلاب |
| reason | سبب | wet | رطب |
| hard | صلب | weather | طقس |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|
| use | يستخدم | used | used |
| last | يدوم / يستمر | lasted | lasted |
| cover | يغطي | covered | covered |
| enjoy | يستمتع | enjoyed | enjoyed |
| damage | يضر / يتلف | damaged | damaged |



Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Lesson (1)

### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|
| know | يعرف | knew | known |
| build | يبني | built | built |
| learn | يتعلم | learnt / learned | learnt / learned |
| make | يصنع | made | made |
| find | يجد | found | found |
| keep | يحفظ | kept | kept |

### Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| welcome to | مرحبا بكم في | made of | مصنوع من (مادة لا تتغير) |
| excited to | متحمس لـ | made from | مصنوع من (مادة تتغير) |
| damaged by | تَضَرَّر بـ | a lot of | الكثير من |
| close to | قريب من | first of all | أولًا |
| cover in | يغطي بـ | last forever | يدوم للأبد |
| happy about | سعيد بشأن | an interesting question | سؤال مثير للاهتمام |
| work at | يعمل في | Tutankhamun's tomb | مقبرة توت عنخ آمون |
| good for | جيد لـ / مفيد لـ | in good conditions | في ظروف جيدة |
| The Museum of Ancient History | | | متحف التاريخ القديم |
| Egyptian Eagle Primary School | | | مدرسة النسر المصري الابتدائية |

### Study the following:

1 
2 
3 
4 
5 

1. The picture is made of papyrus. الصورة مصنوعة من ورق البردي.
2. The pots are made of glass. الأواني مصنوعة من الزجاج.
3. The statue is made of gold. التمثال مصنوع من الذهب.
4. The temple is made of granite. المعبد مصنوع من الجرانيت.
5. The jar is made of clay. البرطمان مصنوع من الفخار.

### Did you know?

An artifact is an object that was made by humans in the past. The Khufu solar ship is an artifact from Ancient Egypt. It is the world's oldest **intact** ship.

القطعة الأثرية هي شيء صنعه البشر في الماضي. مركب الشمس الخاص بالملك خوفو هو قطعة أثرية من مصر القديمة. إنها أقدم سفينة سليمة في العالم.



## Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Mr Tarek : Good morning and welcome to the Museum of Ancient History. My name is Mr Tarek and I am your guide today.
ـاح الخير ومرحبًا بكم في متحف التاريخ القديم. اسمي السيد طارق وأنا مرشدكم اليوم.

Tamer : Good morning, Mr Tarek. I'm Tamer and this is my sister Tamara. We're students at Egyptian Eagle Primary School, and these are our parents.
ـاح الخير استاذ طارق. أنا تامر وهذه أختي تمارا. نحن طلاب في مدرسة النسر المصري الابتدائية، وهذان هما والدينا.

Tamara : We're excited to learn more about Ancient Egyptian artifacts
ـن متحمسون لمعرفة المزيد عن القطع الأثرية المصرية القديمة.

Mr Tarek : Great! What would you like to know? ـظيم! ماذا تريديـن أن تعرفي؟

Tamara : Well, first of all, why do we have so many **artifacts**?
ـسنًا، أولاً وقبل كل شيء، لماذا لدينا الكثير من القطع الأثرية؟

Mr Tarek : That's an interesting question. One reason is the climate We have a hot, dry climate here in Egypt, so artifacts aren't damaged by cold and wet weather. This helps to **preserve** them. The Ancient Egyptians also knew that certain materials could last a long time. That's why they built the Pyramids with **granite**, a very hard and **durable** stone.
هذا سؤال مثير للاهتمام. أحد الأسباب هو المناخ. لدينا مناخ حار وجاف هنا في مصر، لذلك لا تتضرر القطع الأثرية بسبب الطقس البارد والرطب. وهذا يساعد على الحفاظ عليها. عرف المصريون القدماء أيضًا أن بعض المواد الخام يمكن أن تدوم لفترة طويلة. ولهذا السبب بنوا الأهرامات بالجرانيت، وهو حجر شديد الصلابة والمتانة.

Tamer : That's **fascinating**! What other materials did they use?
هذا رائع! ما هي المواد الخام الأخرى التي استخدموها؟

Mr Tarek : They used a lot of **glass**, which lasts forever. They also used clay, which is found close to the River Nile, to make pots.
لقد استخدموا الكثير من الزجاج الذي يدوم إلى الأبد. كما استخدموا الطين الموجود بالقرب من نهر النيل لصنع الأواني.

Tamer : I also heard they used a lot of **gold** in Tutankhamun's tomb.
وسمعت أيضًا أنهم استخدموا الكثير من الذهب في مقبرة توت عنخ آمون.

Mr Tarek : Yes, the Ancient Egyptians liked to use gold because it is valuable, but it is also very durable. When they covered artifacts in gold, they kept them in good condition.
نعم، كان المصريون القدماء يحبون استخدام الذهب لأنه ذو قيمة، ولكنه أيضًا متين للغاية. وعندما غطوا القطع الأثرية بالذهب، احتفظوا بها في حالة جيدة.

Tamer : I'm happy about that! It's exciting to enjoy the things they made.
أنا سعيد بذلك! من المثير الاستمتاع بالأشياء التي صنعوها.



Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

# Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We have a hot, ........................ climate here in Egypt.
   a) wet b) dry c) cold d) cool
2. Artifacts aren't ........................ by cold and wet weather.
   a) kept b) stayed c) damaged d) built
3. Certain materials could ........................ a long time.
   a) cast b) past c) fast d) last
4. The Pyramids were built with ........................
   a) granite b) gold c) clay d) glass

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids with ........................
   a) paper b) clay c) bronze d) granite
2. Ancient Egyptians used gold for ........................
   a) artifacts b) arts c) facts d) papyrus
3. Gold is valuable and ........................
   a) cheap b) durable c) wet d) cold
4. A hot and dry climate helps to ........................ artifacts.
   a) preserve b) damage c) sell d) buy
5. The Ancient Egyptians used a lot of ........................ in Tutankhamun's tomb.
   a) papyrus b) clay c) glass d) gold

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**cheap - kept - clay - valuable - artifacts**

The Ancient Egyptians used a lot of glass, which lasts forever. They also used, 1)........................ which is found close to the River Nile, to make pots. They also liked to use gold because it is 2)........................, but it is also very durable. When they covered 3)........................ in gold, they ........................them in good condition.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Egyptian artifacts are objects created by the ancient Egyptians. The made many fascinating artifacts that lasted thousands of years. These artifacts include pottery, jewelry, tombs and temples. Artifacts are very important for the information they provide about the history of Egypt. We have a hot, dry climate here in Egypt, so artifacts aren't damaged. This helps to preserve them. The Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids with granite. They used glass, which lasts forever. They used clay to make pots, too.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The Ancient Egyptians made many .................................. artifacts
   a) **fascinated** b) **fascinate** c) **fascinating** d) **fascinates**
2. Artifacts are important for the .................................. they provide
   a) **temples** b) **information** c) **climate** d) **pots**
3. The underlined word "ancient" means very ..................................
   a) **old** b) **modern** c) **new** d) **long**

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What's the main idea of the text? ..................................
5. What materials did the Ancient Egyptians use for artifacts? ..................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. to learn - are - We - excited - about - Ancient - Egypt - .

..................................

2. climate - The Egyptian - good - is - preserving - for - artifacts - .

..................................

3. you - like - What - would - know - to - ?

..................................

## 6 Punctuate the following.

- gold is valuable and durable ..................................

## 7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A visit to the museum

Guiding elements:

- **Where is the museum?**
- **What artifacts did you see?**
- **How did you feel?**



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Lesson (2) THEY LOVED ANIMALS

## Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية


baboon
قرد البابون


monkey
قرد


rat
فأر


crocodile
تمساح


hippo
فرس النهر


falcon
صقر


ibis
طائر أبو منجل


snake
ثعبان

## Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| birds | طيور | flour | دقيق | cloth | قماش |
| pets | حيوانات أليفة | bread | خبز | afterlife | الحياة الآخرة |
| popular | شعبي / محبوب | knowledge | معرفة | dangerous | خطير |
| favorite | مُفضل | seeds | بذور | almost | تقريبًا |
| stone | حجر | particularly | وبشكل خاص | common | شائع |
| person | شخص | object | شئ | alone | بمفرده |
| oil | زيت | turtle | سلحفاة | reason | سبب |

## Definitions

تعريفات

- seeds from plants used to make flour and bread — حبوب
- to cover in oils and cloth to preserve for a very long time — يحنط
- using your knowledge to make good decisions — حكمة
- an object made of stone or another material to look like a person or animal — تمثال
- loved something very much — أحبّ بشدة / عَشِق

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

# Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

## Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|
| clean | ينظف | cleaned | cleaned |
| produce | ينتج | produced | produced |
| include | يتضمن | included | included |
| represent | يمثل | represented | represented |
| believe | يؤمن / يعتقد | believed | believed |

## Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|
| grow | يزرع / ينمو | grew | grown |
| go | يذهب | went | gone |
| fall | يقع / يسقط | fell | fallen |
| teach | يُعلِّم | taught | taught |
| become | يصبح | became | become |
| hurt | يؤذي / يؤلم | hurt | hurt |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| fall over | يقع على / يسقط على | as well | أيضًا |
| cover in | يغطي بـ | as well as | بالإضافة إلى |
| look after | يعتني بـ | everyday life | الحياة اليومية |
| free of pests | خالي من الحشرات أو الهوام | a very long time | فترة طويلة جدًا |
| look like | يشبه | make decisions | يتخذ قرارات |
| keep it safe | يبقيه آمنًا | a boat ride | رحلة بالقارب |
| keep birds | يربي طيور | grow up | يكبر |
| the whole time | طوال الوقت | go hiking | يتنزه سيرًا على الأقدام |
| had a picnic | قام بنزهه | in bed | في الفراش |



Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Lesson (2)

### Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

### What was the Ancient Egyptians' favorite animal?

ما هو الحيوان المفضل لدى المصريين القدماء؟

The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They particularly **adored** cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them and kept them safe. They were also good pets because they cleaned themselves and kept the houses free of pests like rats and snakes. This was particularly important for farmers, who produced a lot of **grain**. The rats didn't eat the grain because the cats ate the rats!

أحب المصريون القدماء الحيوانات وقاموا بتربية الكثير منها كحيوانات أليفة. كانوا يعشقون بشكل خاص القطط ، وكان هناك قطة في كل منزل تقريبًا. اعتقد المصريون القدماء أن القطط تعتني بهم وتبقيهم آمنين. لقد كانت أيضًا حيوانات أليفة جيدة لأنّهم قاموا بتنظيف أنفسهم وجعلوا المنازل خالية من الآفات والهوام مثل الفئران والثعابين. كان هذا مهمًا بشكل خاص للمزارعين ، الذين كانوا ينتجون الكثير من الحبوب. لم تأكل الفئران الحبوب لأن القطط أكلت الفئران!

### What other animals did the Ancient Egyptians keep?

ما هي الحيوانات الأخرى التي قام بتربيتها المصريون القدماء؟

As well as cats, many people kept monkeys and baboons. Some people even kept crocodiles, hippos, and lions, which were dangerous and difficult to look after. They weren't popular pets!

بالإضافة إلى القطط ، ربّى الكثير من الناس القرود والبابون. حتى أن بعض الناس قاموا بتربية التماسيح وأفراس النهر والأسود ، والتي كانت خطيرة ويصعب الاعتناء بها. فلم تكن حيوانات أليفة محبوبة!

### Did the Ancient Egyptians keep birds as pets as well?

هل قام المصريون القدماء بتربية الطيور كحيوانات أليفة أيضًا؟

Yes, they did. The Ancient Egyptians loved birds too, especially falcons and the ibis, which represented **wisdom**. There are thousands of **mummified** ibises in Saqqara alone. All these pets weren't only important for the Ancient Egyptians' everyday life—they were also important in the afterlife. It is therefore common to find mummified pets and **statues** of animals in the tombs.

نعم. أحب المصريون القدماء الطيور أيضًا ، وخاصة الصقور و طائر أبو منجل، والذين كانوا يرمزون إلى الحكمة. هناك الآلاف من طيور أبو منجل المحنطة في سقارة وحدها. كل هذه الحيوانات الأليفة لم تكن مهمة فقط للحياة اليومية للمصريين القدماء - بل كانت مهمة أيضًا في الحياة الآخرة. لذلك من الشائع العثور على حيوانات أليفة محنطة وتماثيل للحيوانات في المقابر.

### What animals are popular pets in Egypt today?

ما هي الحيوانات الأليفة المشهورة في مصر اليوم؟

Today, cats are still popular pets in Egypt. Other animals that people keep today include turtles, fish, and birds, which are of course much smaller and easier to look after than baboons and crocodiles.

اليوم، لا تزال القطط حيوانات أليفة شائعة في مصر. تشمل الحيوانات الأخرى التي يربيها الناس اليوم السلاحف والأسماك والطيور، والتي هي بالطبع أصغر بكثير وأسهل في الاعتناء بها من قرود البابون والتماسيح.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



## The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

### Form التكوين

- **The second form of the verb.** التصريف الثاني للفعل.

### Usage الاستخدام

- **We use The Past Simple Tense to express finished action in the past.** نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث انتهت في الماضي.

### 1 Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

نضيف (d, ed, ied) إلى الفعل المنتظم.

visit → visited    need → needed

إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (e) يُضاف (d) فقط.

love → loved    like → liked

إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (y) ويسبقه حرف ساكن نحذف (y) ثم نضيف (ied).

try → tried    study → studied

إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (y) ويسبقه حرف متحرك يتم إضافة (ed) للفعل.

play → played    stay → stayed

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوقًا بحرف متحرك واحد نُضاعف الحرف الأخير.

drop → dropped    stop → stopped

### 2 Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

become → became    keep → kept

### Keywords الكلمات الدالة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| yesterday | أمس | last (year / .....) | العام / (.....) الماضي |
| ago | منذ | in the past | في الماضي |
| Once | ذات مرة | in 2015 | في عام (٢٠١٥) أي تاريخ ماضي |

e.g. I visited my grandmother yesterday.
Ali played with his cousin last Saturday.

### Negative النفي

**Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)**

e.g. Rats didn't eat the grain. - I didn't grow up in Cairo.



Help your child identify the past simple tense.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على زمن الماضي البسيط.

## estion السؤال

### es / No) question: السؤال بـ "هل":

**Did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?**

Did the Ancient Egyptians only keep cats as pets?
- Yes, they did. - No, they didn't.

### n-question: السؤال بـ "كلمة استفهام":

**Q.W + did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?**

I. What did they feed their cats?
Where did he grow up?

## Verb to be in the past

### Form التكوين

**(I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد) + was .....**

.g. I was at school yesterday.

**(They / You / We / اسم جمع) + were .....**

g. They were at school yesterday.

### Negative النفي

**Subject + (wasn't / weren't) + باقي الجملة**

.g. I wasn't a student at the local school.
They weren't popular pets.

### Question السؤال

### (Yes / No) question: السؤال بـ "هل":

**(Was / Were) + subject + باقي الجملة ?**

e.g. Were there a lot of mummies?
- Yes, there were. - No, there weren't.

### Wh-question: السؤال بـ "كلمة استفهام":

**Q.W + (was / were) + subject + باقي الجملة ?**

e.g. Which was their favorite animal?

lelp your child identify verb to be in the past.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على "verb to be" في الماضي.




## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Did you ........................................ a nice weeke
   a) have  b) has  c) having  d) had
2. I ........................................ to Al-Azhar Park with my family last we
   a) go  b) went  c) goes  d) will go
3. We went on a boat ride. It ........................................ gr
   a) is  b) were  c) was  d) are
4. There ........................................ popular pe
   a) hasn't  b) don't  c) weren't  d) wasn't
5. Rats didn't ........................................ the gr
   a) eat  b) eats  c) ate  d) eating
6. Which ........................................ their favorite anim
   a) are  b) was  c) were  d) have
7. ........................................ the Ancient Egyptians only keep cats as pe
   a) Do  b) Does  c) Did  d) Doing
8. What did they ........................................ their ca
   a) feed  b) feeds  c) fed  d) feeding
9. The Ancient Egyptians ........................................ their pe
   a) love  b) loves  c) loved  d) loving
10. The Ancient Egyptians ........................................ their monkeys different tric
    a) teach  b) teaches  c) teaching  d) taught

## 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between bracke

1. The crocodiles quickly .............. (becoming) dangerous pets in the pa
2. The ibis ........................................ (represent) wisdom in Ancient Egy
3. ........................................ (Does) you go hiking yesterda
4. I ........................................ (grown) up in Alexandria but now I live in Cai
5. Last week, I ........................................ (fall) over and hurt my ar
6. My trip ........................................ (be) good last Frida
7. Yesterday, I fell over and ........................................ (hurts) my le
8. What did the Ancient Egyptians ........................................ (believed) about cat
9. ........................................ (Do) the Ancient Egyptians keep birds as pet
10. What ........................................ (be) the Ancient Egyptians' favorite anim

# Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Today, ................................................................ are still popular pets in Egypt.

a) cats b) camels c) dogs d) horses

Other animals that people keep today include, turtles, ........... and birds.

a) crocodiles b) fish c) monkeys d) cows

Turtles and birds are ................................... than baboons and crocodiles.

a) bigger b) taller c) smaller d) shorter

I ................................................................................................................. cats.

a) hate b) dislike c) have d) adore

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Did the Ancient Egyptians ............................................................................ birds?

a) dig b) keep c) take d) stay

What animals are ............................................................ pets in Egypt today?

a) popular b) sports c) happy d) sad

Rats and snakes are ..............................................................................................

a) sports b) past c) pests d) insects

" ..................... " means seeds from plants used to make flour and bread.

a) Wisdom b) Statue c) Grain d) Pet

" ............................................................................ " is to love something very much.

a) Mummify b) Fall c) Keep d) Adore

" ........................ " means using your knowledge to make good decisions.

a) Wisdom b) Grain c) Statue d) Falcon

" ................ " is to cover in oils and cloth to preserve for a very long time.

a) Fall b) Mummify c) Produce d) Keep

This ............................................................................................ is made of stone.

a) statue b) grain c) wisdom d) glass

The Ancient Egyptians ...... cats, and there was a cat in almost every house.

a) killed b) adored c) hated d) represented

. Farmers produce a lot of ...............................................................................

a) green b) grown c) grain d) pets

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

hippos - statues - mummified - falcons - wisdom

The Ancient Egyptians loved birds, especially 1)................................ and the ibis, which represented 2)............................... There are thousands of 3)............................ ibises in Saqqara alone. All these pets weren't only important for the Ancient Egyptians' everyday life – they were also important in the afterlife. It is therefore common to find mummified pets and 4)................................ of animals in the tombs.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They particularly adored cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them and kept them safe. They were also good pets because they cleaned themselves and kept the houses free of pests like rats and snakes. This was particularly important for farmers, who produced a lot of grain. The rats didn't eat the grain because the cats ate the rats!
As well as cats, many people kept monkeys and baboons. Some people even kept crocodiles, hippos, and lions, which were dangerous and difficult to look after. They weren't popular pets!

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept them as ................................
   a) bats b) pets c) cats d) rats
2. The cats kept the houses free of ................................................
   a) subjects b) sports c) pests d) grain
3. Some people kept dangerous animals like ..........................................
   a) donkeys b) parrots c) hens d) lions

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. Why didn't the rats eat grain? ...........................................................................
5. What did the Ancient Egyptians believe about cats? ..........................................



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## Lesson (2)

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Al-Azhar - went - I - to - Park - with - family - my - .

.......................................................................................................

2. didn't - My - up - sister - grow - Cairo - in - .

.......................................................................................................

3. bed - stayed - I - in - whole - the - day - .

.......................................................................................................

### Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I ........................................ (become) a teacher last year.
2. ........................ (Do) the Ancient Egyptians keep cats as pets?
3. Where did they ........................................ (went) yesterday?
4. They ........................ (see) a lot of things at the museum last week.
5. When ........................ (does) they go to Alexandria? - Last summer.
6. Ancient Egyptians ........................ (believe) that cats kept them safe.
7. I didn't ........................................ (liked) walking.
8. Hani ........................................ (buy) a new car last Friday.
9. I ........................................ (not be) at school last Sunday.
10. Did you ........................................ (had) a nice weekend?

### Punctuate the following.

- did you grow up in Cairo

.......................................................................................................

### 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

**Your favorite animal**

**Guiding elements:**

- What's it? - Why do you keep it? - What do you do with it?

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

# Lesson (3) Part (A) METAL IN ANCIENT EGYPT

## Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| trade | تجارة / يتاجر | stone | حجر | weapon | سلاح |
| metal | معدن | economy | اقتصاد | | |

## Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| country | دولة / بلد | system | نظام | jewelry | مجوهرات |
| rocks | صخور | chin | ذقن | goods | بضائع |
| melt | يذوب | whiteboard | سبورة بيضاء | beard | لحية |
| tool | أداة / عدة يدوية | clock | ساعة حائط | head | رأس |
| silver | فضة | art | عمل فني | rare | نادر |

## Definitions تعريفات

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| economy | the system of how a country's money and goods are produced and used | اقتصاد |
| metal | something, like gold or iron, that is hard and strong | معدن |
| trade | buying and selling things between countries | تجارة |
| weapon | an object used for fighting or hunting animals | سلاح |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|
| form | يكوّن / يشكل | formed | formed |
| hunt | يصطاد | hunted | hunted |

### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|
| sell | يبيع | sold | sold |
| buy | يشترى | bought | bought |
| fight | يقاتل / يتشاجر | fought | fought |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| trade with | يتاجر مع | Tutankhamun's Mask | قناع توت عنخ آمون |
| form it into | يشكلها إلى | with blue lines | ذات خطوط زرقاء |



Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Lesson (3 / A)

### Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

The Ancient Egyptians traded with other countries, and metal was one thing they traded. They first found metal in rocks. Metal was harder than rocks, and they could melt and form it into different shapes. They used metal to make tools and weapons, so that they could hunt on the land, and grow food. Gold was a popular metal for making jewelry and art to sell. Silver was also used, but was rarer. Trade with other countries helped the Ancient Egyptian economy to improve.

كان المصريون القدماء يتاجرون مع الدول الأخرى، وكان المعدن أحد الأشياء التي يتاجرون بها. لقد وجدوا أولاً المعدن في الصخور. كان المعدن أصلب من الصخور، وكان بإمكانهم صهره وتشكيله إلى أشكال مختلفة. استخدموا المعدن لصنع الأدوات والأسلحة، حتى يتمكنوا من الصيد على الأراضي وزراعة الغذاء. كان الذهب معدنًا شائعًا لصنع المجوهرات والأعمال الفنية لبيعها. كما تم استخدام الفضة أيضًا، ولكنها كانت نادرة. ساعدت التجارة مع الدول الأخرى الاقتصاد المصري القديم على التحسن.

### Read and match.

1. trade
2. metal
3. weapon
4. economy

a. the system of how a country's money and goods are produced and used.
b. something, like gold or iron, that is hard and strong.
c. buying and selling things between countries.
d. an object used for fighting or hunting animals.

### Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

One of the most beautiful artifacts from Ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's mask, which was found in his tomb. The mask is gold, with blue lines between gold lines. Under his chin is a thin beard. There is also a snake on the top of his head.



إن من أجمل القطع الأثرية من مصر القديمة هو قناع توت عنخ آمون الذي عُثر عليه في مقبرته. القناع ذهبي، وبه وجود خطوط زرقاء بين الخطوط الذهبية. وتحت ذقنه لحية رقيقة. يوجد أيضًا ثعبان في أعلى رأسه.

# Prepositions of place

## حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

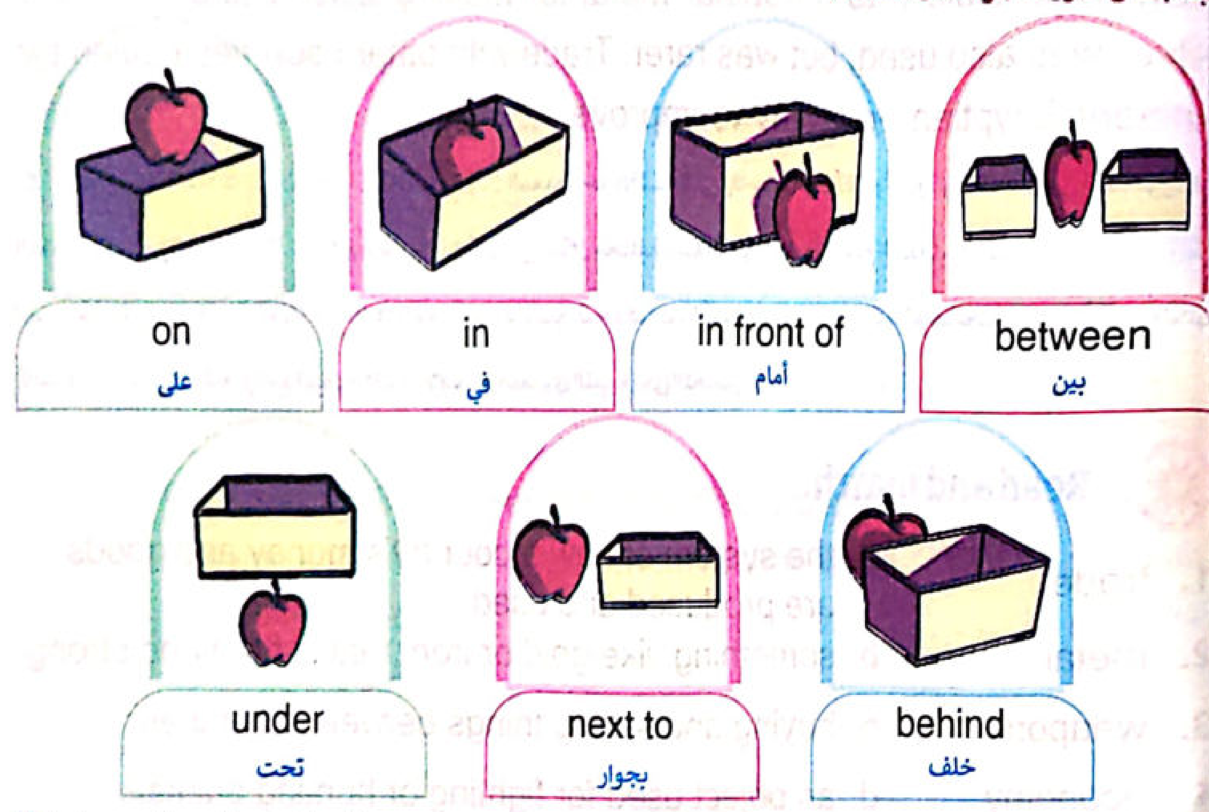
**We use prepositions of place to say where things are:**

ستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لنخبر عن مكان الأشياء:

e.g. The Ancient Egyptians first found metal **in** the rocks.
They could hunt and grow things **on** the land.

**Here are some common prepositions of place:**

ك بعض حروف جر المكان الشائعة:




**To ask about places:**

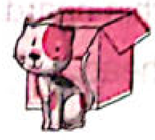
للسؤال عن الأماكن:

**Where ........?** (أين ........؟)

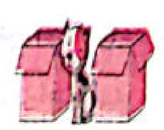
e.g. Where is the cat?
- It's **on** the box.



e.g. Where is the cat?
- It's **in front of** the box.



e.g. Where is the cat?
- It's **between** the boxes.





Help your child identify prepositions of place.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان.




## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Ancient Egyptians first found metal .................... the rocks.
   a) behind b) in front of c) in d) at
2. The apple is .................... to the box.
   a) front b) next c) behind d) on
3. The cat is .................... of the chair.
   a) behind b) on c) in front d) next
4. He has a thin beard .................... his chin.
   a) between b) front c) under d) next to
5. There is a snake .................... the top of Tutankhamun's head.
   a) in b) on c) to d) behind
6. I can see an apple .................... the table and the box.
   a) in b) in front c) next d) between
7. There is a boy .................... the door, so I can't see him.
   a) next to b) behind c) in front of d) in

## Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I like walking .................... (on) the fresh air.
2. There is an apple .................... (front) to the box.
3. I can see a book .................... (next to) the table and the desk.
4. The apple is .................... (behind) of the box.
5. There's a cap .................... (in) the top of his head.
6. Ali is sitting next .................... (of) his friend.
7. There is a pen .................... (front) the books.
8. My brother always puts his shoes .................... (in) the chairs.

# Lesson (3) Part (B) METAL IN ANCIENT EGYPT

## Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| golden touch | لمسة ذهبية | trip over | يخطو بقدمه على/ يدوس على |
| tears | دموع | hug | يحتضن |

## Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| king | ملك | human | إنسان | castle | قلعة |
| unkind | قاسي | rich | غني | sick | مريض |
| goat | عنزة | rose garden | حديقة زهور | precious | ثمين |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|
| touch | يلمس | touched | touched |
| celebrate | يحتفل | celebrated | celebrated |
| save | ينقذ | saved | saved |
| change | يغير | changed | changed |

### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|
| feel | يشعر | felt | felt |
| leave | يغادر | left | left |
| lose | يفقد | lost | lost |
| give | يعطى | gave | given |
| take | يأخذ | took | taken |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| get a reward | يحصل على مكافأة | change back into | يغير ... إلى ما كان عليه |
| turn to / into | يتحول إلى | ask for a special meal | يطلب وجبة مميزة |
| care about | يعتني بـ | strange - looking goat | عنزة غريبة الشكل |
| come true | يتحقق | It looked very sick | بدت مريضة جدًا |



Help your child identify these words.

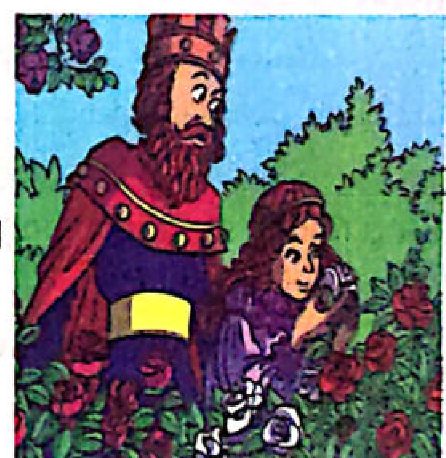
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

# KING MIDAS AND THE GOLDEN TOUCH

الملك ميداس واللمسة الذهبية



Many years ago, there lived a king called King Midas. He loved three things more than anything else: his daughter, Marigold, his rose garden, and gold. His favorite thing was to spend time in his garden with Marigold. But he also liked to look at all the gold in his castle.

منذ عدة سنوات ، عاش هناك ملك يسمى الملك ميداس. لقد أحب ثلاثة أشياء أكثر من أي شيء آخر: ابنته ، ماري جولد ، وحديقة الزهور، والذهب. وكان الشيء المُفضل لديه هو قضاء بعض الوقت في حديقته مع ماري جولد. لكنه أحب أيضًا أن ينظر إلى كل الذهب في قلعته.

One night, he was walking in his garden when he **tripped over** something on the ground. It was a strange-looking goat. It looked very sick. King Midas was a kind man, so he took the goat into his castle. There, he gave it food and a warm bed. In the morning, the goat felt much better.

في إحدى الليالي ، كان يمشي في حديقته عندما داس على شيء ما على الأرض. كانت عنزة غريبة المظهر. بدت مريضة جدًا. كان الملك ميداس رجلاً لطيفًا ، لذا أخذ العنزه في قلعته. هناك ، أعطاها الطعام وسرير دافئ. في الصباح ، شعرت العنزة بتحسن كبير.

"I would like to thank you, King Midas," said the goat. "What would you like more than anything else in the world?"

King Midas thought for a minute, then said, "I would like everything I touch to turn into gold."

"OK," said the goat, and made the king's wish come true.

قالت العنزة: "أود أن أشكرك أيها الملك ميداس". "ما الذي تُحبه أكثر من أي شيء آخر في العالم؟" فكر الملك ميداس لمدة دقيقة ، ثم قال: "أود أن يتحول كل شيء ألمسه إلى الذهب". قالت العنزة "حسنًا"، وحققت أمنية الملك.

King Midas was very excited. After the goat left, he walked around the castle. When he touched a chair, it turned to gold. When he touched his bed, it turned to gold, too. To celebrate, he asked for a special meal. But when he touched

the food, he couldn't eat it because it turned to gold. Then, he went outsid into the garden to find Marigold. When he **hugged** her, she also turned t gold!

الملك ميداس متحمسًا جدًا. بعد مغادرة العنزة ، تجول حول القلعة وعندما لمس كرسيًا، تحول إلى ذهب. وعندما لمس سريره، ول إلى ذهب ، أيضا. ولكي يحتفل بذلك، طلب وجبة خاصة. ولكن عندما لمس الطعام، لم يستطع تناوله لأنه تحول إلى ذهب. ثم ب للخارج إلى الحديقة ليجد ابنته مارى جولد وعندما عانقها ، تحولت أيضا إلى ذهب!

King Midas started crying. "Please come back, goat!" he said. "I can't los Marigold."

His **tears** fell on his precious roses and they turned to gold. But he didn't car about roses or gold any more – he just wanted to save his daughter.

الملك ميداس في البكاء. وقال للعنزة "من فضلك عودي". "أنا لا أستطيع أن أفقد مارى جولد." سقطت دموعه على أزهاره الثمينة حولت إلى ذهب. لكنه لم يعد يهتم بالورود أو الذهب - لقد أراد فقط إنقاذ ابنته.

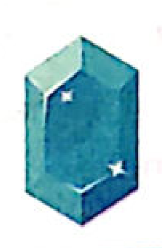
The goat heard King Midas and returned to change everything back to ho it was before.

"Thank you so much!" said King Midas. "I will never think gold is so importar again!"

معت العنزة الملك ميداس وعادت لتغيير كل شيء إلى ما كان عليه من قبل. قال الملك ميداس "شكراً جزيلاً" . "لن أعتقد أبدًا أن ذهب مهم جدًا مرة أخرى!"



bear
دُب

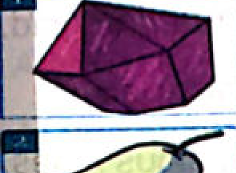


rare
نادر



## 1 Read again and answer T (True) or F (False).

1. King Midas only loved gold.
2. King Midas helped the goat.
3. King Midas was sad when everything changed to gold.
4. The goat didn't change Marigold back into a human.











## 2 Read again and choose the moral (المغزى) a, b or c.

a. It's good to have a lot of gold and be rich.

b. You will always get a reward if you are unkind.

c. Your family is more important than money and material things.



Help your child listen and read.

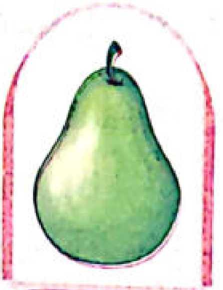
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Help your child identif

# PRONUNCIATION


wear
يرتدى


tear
يمزق


pear
كمثرى


share
يشارك


hair
شعر


pair of
زوج من


air
هواء


there
هناك

## Study the sound /er/

That gemstone is very **rare** - it's not easy to find.

هذا الحجر الكريم نادر جدًا ، ليس من السهل العثور عليه.

This **pear** looks delicious.

هذه الكمثرى تبدو لذيذة.

There's a **pair** of brown shoes.

هناك زوج من الأحذية البنية.

I like walking in the fresh **air**.

أحب التمشية في الهواء النقي.

Don't pull that. You'll **tear** it!

لا تسحب ذلك. سوف تمزقها!

What do you want to **wear** today?

ماذا تريدين أن ترتدي اليوم؟

... the sound /er/.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف الصوت /er/.

استماع في نهاية الكتاب

# General Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. One of the most beautiful artifacts from Ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's
   a) mask b) head c) beard d) snake
2. Tutankhamun's mask was found in his ..............................
   a) pyramid b) tomb c) house d) home
3. The mask is ..............................
   a) glass b) bronze c) gold d) silver
4. There's also a .............................. on the top of his he
   a) hippo b) ibis c) falcon d) snake

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The king was walking in his garden when he ............ over something on ground.
   a) tripped b) trapped c) hugged d) tore
2. When the king .............................. his daughter, she also turned to g
   a) hated b) stayed c) produced d) hugged
3. King Midas started crying and his .................. fell on his precious ros
   a) eyes b) legs c) tears d) pears
4. The Ancient Egyptians .............................. with other countr
   a) used b) formed c) felt d) traded
5. The Ancient Egyptians used metals to make tools and ..................
   a) weapons b) plants c) flowers d) papyrus
6. Trade with other countries helped the Ancient Egyptian ...... to impro
   a) system b) economy c) rocks d) metals
7. " .............................. " is something, like gold or iron, that's hard and stro
   a) Stone b) Wood c) Metal d) Paper



Help your child deal with such questions.

طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

castle - gold - rose - daughter - son

Many years ago, there lived a king called King Midas. He loved three things more than anything else: his 1)............................, Marigold, his 2)........................ garden, and 3)........................ His favorite thing was to spend time in his garden with Marigold. But he also liked to look at all the gold in his 4)............................

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The Ancient Egyptians traded with other countries, and metal was one thing they traded. They first found metal in rocks. Metal was harder than rocks, and they could melt and form it into different shapes. They used metal to make tools and weapons, so that they could hunt on the land, and grow food. Gold was a popular metal for making jewelry and art to sell. Silver was also used, but was rarer. Trade with other countries helped the Ancient Egyptian economy to improve.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The general idea of the text is about ..............................
   a) metal b) paper c) glass d) rock
2. Metal was .............................................. than rocks.
   a) softer b) harder c) smaller d) bigger
3. Silver was also used, but was ..............................
   a) harder b) nicer c) rarer d) lighter

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. Why did the Ancient Egyptians use metal?

..............................................................................................

5. What was gold used for?

..............................................................................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Egyptians - with - The Ancient - traded - countries - other - .

...........................................................................

2. under - The whiteboard - the - is - clock - .

...........................................................................

3. next - is - to - the - The library - room - computer - .

...........................................................................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brack

1. The eraser is .............................. (behind) to the bo
2. The cat is in front .............................. (on) the d
3. There's a boy .............................. (in front of) the door. I can't see h
4. The ball is .............................. (on) the desk and the ch
5. There is a sofa .............................. (in front) to the winc
6. The curtains are .............................. (in) the w
7. The boy is standing .............................. (next) of the d

## 7 Punctuate the following.

- they found metal in the rocks

...........................................................................

## 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

**Tutankhamun's mask**

**Guiding elements:**

**(beautiful artifacts - found - tomb - made of - snake)**

...........................................................................

...........................................................................

...........................................................................

...........................................................................



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

# Lessons (4 & 5)

# WRITING: A FACT FILE PROJECT

## Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| iron | حديد | dagger | خنجر | mine | منجم |
| meteorite | حجز نيزكي | precious | ثمين | Scarab Amulet | تميمة الخنفساء (الجعران) |

## Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| copper | نحاس | rarer | أكثر ندرة | salts | أملاح |
| bronze | برونز | gallery | معرض فنون | items | أشياء |
| craftsmen | حرفيين | mirror | مرآة | sheet | لوح / صفيحة |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|
| mine | يستخرج معادن | mined | mined |
| appear | يظهر | appeared | appeared |
| decorate | يُزين | decorated | decorated |
| destroy | يدمر | destroyed | destroyed |
| melt | ينصهر | melted | melted |

### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|
| begin | يبدأ | began | begun |
| wear | يرتدى | wore | worn |
| bring | يحضر / يجلب | brought | brought |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| the result of | نتيجة الـ | difficult to use | من الصعب استخدامه |
| but later on | لكن فيما بعد | the metal of heaven | معدن السماء (الجنة) |
| with the image of.. | على شكل... | agricultural tools | أدوات زراعية |
| a very hot fire | نار حامية جداً | bring good fortune | يجلب الحظ السعيد |

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

# Iron in Ancient Egypt

الحديد في مصر القديمة



meteorites

### When did the Ancient Egyptians start using iron?

The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ago. Before iron, they worked with copper and bronze.

بدأ المصريون القدماء في استخدام الحديد منذ أكثر من ٥٠٠٠ عام. قبل الحديد، كانوا يعملون بالنحاس والبرونز.

### Where did they find iron?

Amazingly, some of their early iron was from **meteorites**. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made a famous **dagger** for Tutankhamun's tomb from a meteorite. They also mined iron from the ground. But they found it quite difficult to use because it needs a very hot fire to melt, which often wasn't possible.

ومن المثير للدهشة أن بعض الحديد الذى استخدموه في أول الأمر كان من النيازك. صنع الحرفيون المصريون القدماء الخنجر الشهير لمقبرة توت عنخ آمون من الحجر النيزكي. كما قاموا باستخراج الحديد من الأرض. لكنهم وجدوا أنه من الصعب جدًا استخدامه لأنه يحتاج إلى نار حامية جدًا حتى ينصهر، وهو ما لم يكن ممكنًا في كثير من الأحيان.



dagger



mine

### Why did they think iron was special?

They thought iron was special because they believed it came from the sky (because of the meteorites). They called it "the metal of heaven". For them, iron was more **precious** than gold because it was rarer.

لقد اعتقدوا أن الحديد مميز لأنهم اعتقدوا أنه يأتي من السماء (بسبب النيازك). أطلقوا عليه اسم "معدن السماء". بالنسبة لهم، كان الحديد أغلى من الذهب لأنه كان أكثر ندرة.

### What did they use iron for?

Early on, the Ancient Egyptians used iron for small items, like jewelry. Copper and bronze were common metals for tools because they were easier to find. But later on, iron agricultural tools and weapons began to appear. This was the result of the Ancient Egyptians getting more iron through trade with other countries.

في البداية، استخدم المصريون القدماء الحديد في صناعة الأشياء الصغيرة، مثل المجوهرات. كان النحاس والبرونز من المعادن الشائعة في صناعة الأدوات لأنه كان من السهل العثور عليهم. ولكن فيما بعد بدأ ظهور الأدوات الزراعية والأسلحة الحديدية. وكان هذا نتيجة حصول المصريين القدماء على المزيد من الحديد من خلال التجارة مع الدول الأخرى.



Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



# Writing

✳ **When we write a fact file about something, we make notes under the following headings:**

**(When....? - Why....? - Where....? - What....?)**

عند كتابة ملف حقائق عن شيء ما ندون ملاحظات تحت هذه العناوين (متى ....؟ - لماذا ....؟ - أين ....؟ - ماذا ....؟)

## Fact File: Silver in Ancient Egypt

**1** When did the Ancient Egyptians start using silver?

متى بدأ المصريون القدماء في استخدام الفضة؟

They started using silver thousands of years ago.

بدأوا في استخدام الفضة منذ آلاف السنين.

**2** Where did they find the silver?

أين وجدوا الفضة؟

There weren't many silver mines in Egypt, so we think they brought it from other countries through trade.

لم يكن هناك الكثير من مناجم الفضة في مصر، لذلك نعتقد أنهم جلبوها من بلدان أخرى عن طريق التجارة.



**3** What did the Ancient Egyptians use silver for?

فيم استخدم المصريون القدماء الفضة؟



They used it to make jewelry and mirrors. They also used sheet silver to decorate statues.

استخدموها لصنع المجوهرات والمرايا. استخدموا أيضًا صفائح الفضة لتزيين التماثيل.

**4** Why don't we find many silver Ancient Egyptian artifacts?

لماذا لا نجد الكثير من التحف الفضية المصرية القديمة؟

Because silver is not very durable. Sadly, the salts in the tombs destroyed a lot of it, so we cannot see very much of it today.

لأن الفضة ليست متينة للغاية. ومن المؤسف أن الأملاح الموجودة في المقابر دمرت الكثير منها، لذلك لا يمكننا رؤية الكثير منها اليوم.

### Note

عند كتابة ملف حقائق اتبع الآتي:

- Research facts. — ابحث عن حقائق.
- Use correct English. — استخدم لغة انجليزية صحيحة.
- Use formal language and the past tense. — استخدم لغة رسمية وزمن الماضي البسيط.
- Divide the text into questions. — قُم بتقسيم النص إلى أسئلة.



**Write a fact file about "A metal or material".**




**Do research on the Scarab Amulet and make notes on:**

- What is it?

..............................................................................................

- Where is it from?

..............................................................................................

- How old is it?

..............................................................................................

- What is made of?

..............................................................................................

- What was it used for?

..............................................................................................




Scarab Amulet

Egypt

This scarab amulet is an artifact from Ancient Egypt and is more than three thousand years old. It is made of copper. People wore jewelry with the image of a scarab to protect them and bring them good fortune.

تميمة الخنفساء (الجعران)

مصر

تميمة الجعران هذه من مصر القديمة ويبلغ عمرها أكثر من ثلاثة آلاف عام. وهي مصنوعة من النحاس. كان الناس يرتدون المجوهرات التي تحمل صورة الجعران لحمايتهم وجلب الحظ السعيد لهم.



Help your child write about an artifact.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن قطعة أثرية.

# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Ancient Egyptians used iron for .................................................. items.
   a) small  b) big  c) long  d) huge
2. Copper and .................................................. were common metals for tools.
   a) gold  b) silver  c) bronze  d) iron
3. Later on, iron agricultural ........................... and weapons began to appear.
   a) balls  b) pools  c) walls  d) tools
4. The Ancient Egyptians got more .................................................. through trade.
   a) gold  b) iron  c) rocks  d) silver

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Some of the Ancient Egyptians' iron was from ..................................................
   a) sand  b) glass  c) meteorites  d) salt
2. Ancient Egyptians craftsmen made a famous ........... for Tutankhamun's tomb from meteorite.
   a) fork  b) glasses  c) watch  d) dagger
3. The Ancient Egyptians also ........................................ iron from the ground.
   a) mined  b) destroyed  c) appeared  d) decorated
4. Iron was more .................................................. than gold because it was rarer.
   a) cheap  b) precious  c) easy  d) normal

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

protect - jewelry - years - days - copper

The scarab amulet is from Ancient Egypt. It is more than three thousand 1)................................ old. It is made of 2)................................ People wore 3)................................ with the image of a scarab to 4)................................ them and bring them good fortune.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ag Before iron, they worked with copper and bronze. Amazingly, some of the early iron was from meteorites. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb from a meteorite. They als mined iron from the ground. But they found it quite difficult to use becaus it needs a very hot fire to melt, which often wasn't possible.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The text is about ........................................ in Ancient Egy
   a) gold  b) silver  c) iron  d) bronze
2. Before iron, they worked with ........................................ and bronz
   a) iron  b) copper  c) gold  d) salt
3. The Ancient Egyptians mined iron from the ........................................
   a) sky  b) river  c) sea  d) ground

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. What did the Ancient craftsmen make? ........................................
5. Why was it difficult to use iron? ........................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. and - were - Mum - dad - at - yesterday - work - .

   ........................................
2. difficult - Why - was - to - iron - work - with - it - ?

   ........................................
3. to - used - They - silver - and - make - jewelry - mirrors - .

   ........................................

## 6 Punctuate the following.

- where did they find iron ........................................

## 7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Silver in Ancient Egypt

**Guiding elements:**

- When did the Ancient Egyptians use it?
- Where did they find it?
- What did they use it for?



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

# Writing Corner

## Ancient Egyptian Artifacts

There are so many artifacts from Ancient Egypt. We have a hot, dry climate here in Egypt, so artifacts aren't damaged by cold and wet weather. This helps to preserve them. The Ancient Egyptians also knew that certain materials could last a long time. That's why they built the Pyramids with granite, a very hard and durable stone. They used other materials like glass, clay and gold too.

## Animals in Ancient Egypt

The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They particularly adored cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them and kept them safe. They were also good pets because they cleaned themselves and kept the houses free of pests like rats and snakes. This was particularly important for farmers, who produced a lot of grain. The rats didn't eat the grain because the cats ate the rats!

## Tutankhamun's Mask

One of the most beautiful artifacts from Ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's mask, which was found in his tomb. The mask is gold, with blue lines between gold lines. Under his chin is a thin beard. There is also a snake on the top of his head.

## Iron in Ancient Egypt

The Ancient Egyptians used iron 5,000 years ago. Some of their early iron was from meteorites. They also mined it from the ground. They thought iron was special because they believed it came from the sky. They called it "the metal of heaven". They used it for making jewelery, agricultural tools and weapons.

Help your child write paragraphs.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرات.

# Review on Unit (7)

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| artifacts | قطع أثرية / مصنوعات يدوية | trade | تجارة / يتاجر |
| preserve | يحفظ | metal | معدن |
| durable | متين | weapon | سلاح |
| fascinating | رائع / جذاب / مذهل | economy | اقتصاد |
| granite | جرانيت | trip over | يخطو على / يدوس على |
| glass | زجاج | hug | يحتضن |
| clay | صلصال / فخار | tears | دموع |
| gold | ذهب | stone | حجر |
| baboon | قرد البابون | iron | حديد |
| monkey | قرد | meteorite | حجر نيزكي |
| rat | فأر | dagger | خنجر |
| crocodile | تمساح | precious | ثمين |
| hippo | فرس النهر | mine | منجم / يستخرج معادن |
| falcon | صقر | copper | نحاس |
| ibis | طائر أبو منجل | bronze | برونز |
| snake | ثعبان | craftsmen | حرفيين |
| grain | حبوب | mummify | يحنط |
| adore | يُحب بشدة / يعشق | statue | تمثال |
| wisdom | حكمة | melt | يذوب / ينصهر |

## Pronunciation

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| bear | دُب | share | يُشارك | pair | زوج من |
| pear | كمثرى | rare | نادر | hair | شعر |
| tear | يمزق | there | هناك | air | هواء |
| wear | يرتدي | | | | |

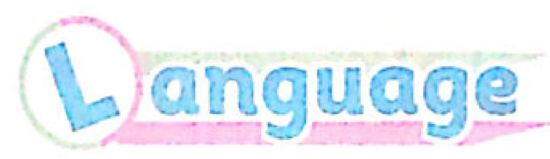
## Prepositions of place

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| in | في | under | تحت | between | بين |
| on | على | behind | خلف | next to | بجوار |
| in front of | أمام | | | | |



Help your child revise unit (7).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة السابعة.



## The Past Simple Tense
زمن الماضي البسيط

### Form التكوين

**The second form of the verb.**

يتكون الماضي البسيط من التصريف الثاني للفعل. (بإضافة d, ed, ied للفعل المنتظم والفعل غير المنتظم يحفظ).

e.g. He dropped the glass. - She became a teacher.

### Negative النفي

**Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)**

e.g. Rats didn't eat the grain. - I didn't grow up in Cairo.

### Question السؤال

(Yes / No) question: **Did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?**

e.g. Did the Ancient Egyptians only keep cats as pets?

- Yes, they did. - No, they didn't.

Wh-question: **Q.W + did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?**

e.g. What did they feed their cats?

## Verb to be in the past

### Form التكوين

**Subject + (was / were) + باقي الجملة**

e.g. There was a cat here.

### Negative النفي

**Subject + (wasn't / weren't) + باقي الجملة**

e.g. There weren't popular pets.

### Question السؤال

**(Was / Were) + subject + باقي الجملة ?**

e.g. Were there a lot of mummies?

- Yes, there were. - No, there weren't.

Wh-question:

**Q.W + (was / were) + subject + باقي الجملة ?**

e.g. Which was their favorite animal?

# Dictation on Unit (7)

## Lesson (1)

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ت | .................................... | قطع أثرية | .................................... |
| ع | .................................... | يحفظ | .................................... |
| ال / فخار | .................................... | متين | .................................... |
| ب | .................................... | مذهل / خلاب | .................................... |

## Lesson (2)

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| النهر | .................................... | قرد | .................................... |
| ر | .................................... | قرد البابون | .................................... |
| أبو منجل | .................................... | فأر | .................................... |
| ن | .................................... | تمساح | .................................... |
| ل | .................................... | حبوب | .................................... |
| ط | .................................... | يُحب بشدة / يعشق | .................................... |
| ون | .................................... | حكمة | .................................... |

## Lesson (3)

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| أعلى / يدوس على | .................................... | تجارة | .................................... |
| تضمن | .................................... | معدن | .................................... |
| وع | .................................... | سلاح | .................................... |
| ر | .................................... | اقتصاد | .................................... |

## Lessons (4 & 5)

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ين | .................................... | حديد | .................................... |
| حم | .................................... | حجر نيزكي | .................................... |
| س | .................................... | خنجر | .................................... |
| نز | .................................... | حرفيين | .................................... |
| ة | .................................... | أكثر ندرة | .................................... |



Help your child dictate these words.

د طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Ancient Egyptians .................................................. with other countries.
   a) played   b) fought   c) traded   d) acted
2. They first found metal in ..................................................................................
   a) clubs   b) rocks   c) temples   d) pyramids
3. They could melt metal into different .....................................................................
   a) artifacts   b) fruits   c) sports   d) shapes
4. They used metal to make tools and ........................................................................
   a) weapons   b) coins   c) rocks   d) money

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Hot and dry climate helps to ................................................................. artifacts.
   a) damage   b) preserve   c) welcome   d) cover
2. Falcons and the ibis represented ........................................ in Ancient Egypt.
   a) wisdom   b) statues   c) grain   d) rocks
3. Trade with other countries helped the Ancient Egyptian ...............................
   a) science   b) history   c) economy   d) art
4. Mothers always ................................ their children when they go to school.
   a) hate   b) dislike   c) hug   d) trip

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

weapons - metals - Copper - trade - countries

The Ancient Egyptians used iron for small items, like jewelry. 1)............ and bronze were common 2)................................ for tools because they were easier to find. But later on, iron agricultural tools and 3)................................ began to appear. This was the result of the Ancient Egyptians getting more iron through 4)................................ with other countries.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

One night, King Midas was walking in his garden when he tripped over something on the ground. It was a strange-looking goat. It looked very sick. King Midas was a kind man, so he took the goat into his castle. There, he gave it food and a warm bed. In the morning, the goat felt much better. "I would like to thank you, King Midas," said the goat. "What would you like more than anything else in the world?" King Midas thought for a minute, then said, "I would like everything I touch to turn into gold." "OK," said the goat, and made the king's wish come true.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. King Midas went to his garden ..............................
   a) **on foot** b) **on a horse** c) **on a donkey** d) **on a goat**
2. The goat looked very ..............................
   a) **well** b) **good** c) **excited** d) **sick**
3. King Midas would like everything he touches to turn into ..............................
   a) **silver** b) **gold** c) **copper** d) **bronze**

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. What did the king give to the goat? ..............................
5. What was the king like? ..............................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. his - on - **The king's** - precious - fell - roses - tears - .
   ..............................
2. found - **The Ancient** - metals - Egyptians - the - in - rocks - .
   ..............................
3. want - you - **What** - to - do - wear - today - ?
   ..............................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between bracket

1. Rats didn't .............................. (eats) the grai
2. .............................. (Do) the Ancient Egyptians keep cats as pet

## 7 Punctuate the following.

- the ibis represented wisdom ..............................

## 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about "Iron in Ancient Egypt":

**Guiding elements:**

- **When did the Ancient Egyptians use it?**
- **Where did they find it?**
- **What did they use it for?**



Help your child deal with such questions.
ـد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

# Al-Azhar Corner

## 1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

**boat - do - Park - did - go**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Mayar | : | Hi Nesma! Did you have a nice weekend? |
| Nesma | : | Hi Mayar! Yes, I 1) ........................................ . |
| Mayar | : | Where did you 2) ........................................ ? |
| Nesma | : | I went to Al-Azhar 3) ........................................ . |
| Mayar | : | What did you 4) ........................................ there? |
| Nesma | : | I had a picnic, then I went on a 5) .................... trip. |

## Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

**sky - mined - find - ago - special**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Omar | : | When did the Ancient Egyptians start using iron? |
| Ali | : | They started using it 5,000 years 1) ........................ . |
| Omar | : | Where did they 2) ........................................ it? |
| Ali | : | They 3) ........................................ it from the ground. |
| Omar | : | Why did they think iron was 4) ........................ ? |
| Ali | : | Because they believed it came from the 5) .................... . |

## 2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | baboon | hippo | crocodile | ibis | (.......................) |
| 2. | rat | granite | glass | clay | (.......................) |
| 3. | play | visit | save | saw | (.......................) |
| 4. | on | in | is | under | (.......................) |
| 5. | went | ate | work | found | (.......................) |

## Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | do | pear | wear | tear | (.......................) |
| 2. | gold | bronze | copper | school | (.......................) |
| 3. | in front of | next to | box | behind | (.......................) |
| 4. | yesterday | last | in the past | tomorrow | (.......................) |
| 5. | Where | White | When | What | (.......................) |

# Unit 8

# Toys and games

**In this unit, the students will ...**

- listen, read, discuss, and write about games, toys, and activities.
- listen to and read a dialog about old toys and games.
- use verb intensifiers.
- listen to and understand a story about a toy.
- use verbs that are followed by -ing.
- spell and say words containing gh or ght.
- use pie charts and bar graphs.
- write a description of your favorite game.
- design and make a simple board game.

# Lesson (1) A BOX OF TOYS

## Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية



doll's house
بيت الدمية



rollerblades
حذاء التزلج (زلاجات)



action figure
شخصية حركية



marbles
البلي



board game
لعبة لوحية



cuddly toy
لعبة محشوة



train set
لعبة القطار



skateboard
لوح التزلج

## Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| favorite | مفضل | actually | في الحقيقة - بالفعل | younger | أصغر سنا |
| toys | ألعاب | too | أيضا | fast | سريع - بسرعة |
| both | كلًا من | again | مرة أخرى | cool | رائع |
| brilliant | رائع | a while | فترة - وقت قليل | older | أكبر سنا |
| box | صندوق | though | مع ذلك - رغم ذلك | later | لاحقًا |

## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

| Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|
| visit | يزور | visited | visited |
| love | يحب | loved | loved |
| find | يجد | found | found |
| make up | يخترع | made up | made up |
| beat | يهزم | beat | beaten |
| know | يعرف | knew | known |

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Important expressions and prepositions ـيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| on the weekend | في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع | after a while | ـد فترة من الوقت |
| love + (v -ing) | يحب | too (+ adj) | ـا |
| look for | يبحث عن | I'd love to + inf. | ـأن ... |
| go fast | يسير بسرعة | very often | ـاً |
| So did I! | وأنا كذلك! | lots of | ـير من |

## Definitions ـيفات

| | |
|---|---|
| beat | be more successful than someone in a game |
| have a go | try something |
| made up | thought of or invented |

## Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

**Fares** : Did you visit your grandma on the weekend, Yaseen?

ـ زرت جدتك في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع يا ياسين؟

**Yaseen** : Yes, I did. I found a box of my old toys at her house, actually.

ـم فعلت. لقد وجدت صندوق ألعابي القديمة في منزلها، بالفعل.

**Adam** : What did you find in there? ـا وجدت فيه؟

**Yaseen** : There was an **action figure**. I loved playing with it!

ـلا هناك شخصية حركية. كنت أحب اللعب بها!

**Fares** : I loved playing with my old action figures, too! I **made up** lots of games for them. ـت أحب اللعب بشخصياتي الحركية القديمة أيضًا! لقد اخترعت الكثير من الألعاب لهم.

**Adam** : When I was younger, my favorite toy was a **train set**.

ـدما كنت أصغر سناً، كانت لعبتي المفضلة هي لعبة القطار.



Help your child listen and read.

ـد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

## Lesson (1)

Yaseen : I didn't have a train set, but my sister had a big **doll's house**. We both played with it. I don't know where it is now. I found my old **rollerblades**, though.

لم يكن لدي لعبة قطار، لكن أختي كان لديها بيت دمية كبير. كنا نلعب به. لا أعرف أين هو الآن. لقد وجدت زلاجاتي القديمة، بالرغم من ذلك.

Adam : Brilliant! Did you **have a go** on them? رائع! هل جربتهم؟

Yaseen : No, I wanted to, but they were too small. لا، أردت ذلك، لكنها كانت صغيره جدًا.

Fares : I didn't have rollerblades, but I had a **skateboard**. I could go really fast after a while!

لم يكن لدي حذاء تزلج، لكن كان لدي لوح تزلج. كنت أستطيع أن أسير بسرعة كبيرة بعد فترة من الوقت!

Yaseen : Cool! Did you play **board games** when you were younger?

رائع! هل كنت تلعب ألعاب لوحية عندما كنت أصغر سنأ؟

Fares : Yes, we played board games. I played with my older brother, but he usually beat me!

نعم، لقد لعبنا ألعاب لوحية. كنت ألعب مع أخي الاكبر، لكنه عادة ما كان يهزمني!

Adam : We didn't play board games very often, but we played **marbles**.

لم نكن نلعب ألعاب لوحية كثيرًا، لكننا لعبنا البلي.

Fares : So did I! I think I'll look for some of my old toys later. I'd love to see my favorite **cuddly toy** again.

وأنا كذلك! أعتقد أنني سأبحث عن بعض ألعابي القديمة لاحقًا. أحب أن أرى لعبتي المحشوة المفضلة مرة أخرى.

## Ask and answer.

اسأل وأجب.



When you were younger, what was your favorite toy?

عندما كنت أصغر سنًا، ماذا كانت لعبتك المفضلة؟

My favorite toy was a skateboard.

كانت لعبتي المفضلة لوح التزلج.



# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Fares and Yaseen are .................................................. .
   a) friends  b) brothers  c) cousins  d) uncles
2. They visited grandma .................................................. .
   a) yesterday  b) on the weekend  c) tomorrow  d) last week
3. Fares loved playing with a/an .................................................. .
   a) train set  b) action figure  c) skateboard  d) doll's house
4. Yaseen's .................................................. had a doll's house.
   a) brother  b) sister  c) cousin  d) mum

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I visited my uncle .................................................. the weekend.
   a) in  b) on  c) at  d) by
2. I have an action .................................................. . I love playing with it.
   a) game  b) finger  c) figure  d) doll
3. I could go really fast on my .................................................. .
   a) marbles  b) skateboard  c) doll  d) train
4. Did you have a .................................................. on your rollerblades?
   a) go  b) play  c) went  d) ride
5. I loved .................................................. with my action figures.
   a) play  b) played  c) playing  d) plays
6. I could go really fast on my skateboard after a .................................................. .
   a) while  b) when  c) what  d) time

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**playing - figures - make - box - play**

I have a box of toys. I love 1) ........................ with my toys. I have some action 2) ........................ . I 3) ........................ up lots of games for them. I always 4) ........................ with my brother. We have a great time together.



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



## Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Sarah. I'm twelve years old. I visited my grandma on the weekend. I found a box of my old toys at her house. I found an action figure. I loved playing with it. I found my old rollerblades, too. They were too small. I was very happy to have a go on them again.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Sarah is .................................................... years old.
   a) 11 b) 10 c) 12 d) 13
2. Sarah visited her grandma on .................................................... .
   a) Monday b) Tuesday c) Wednesday d) the weekend
3. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the .................................................... .
   a) train set b) action figure c) marbles d) box

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. What did Sarah find at her grandma's house? ....................................................
5. Why was Sarah very happy? ....................................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. was - I - had - When - younger, - I - set - a train - .

....................................................................................................

2. you - a go - Did - on - have - rollerbaldes - ?

....................................................................................................

3. love to - my favorite - see - I'd - toy - cuddly - .

....................................................................................................

## 6 Punctuate the following.

- what did you find in your box ....................................................



## Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

**My box of toys when I was younger**

**Guiding elements:** - What did you find in it? - What is your favorite toy?

# Lesson (2) I WAS VERY GOOD AT HIDE AND SEEK

## Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية


skipping
نط الحبل


hide and seek
لعبة الاستغماية - الغميضة


hopscotch
لعبة المربعات (الحجلة)

## Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| helmet | خوذة | knee pads | وسادات الركبة | interesting | شيق |
| project | مشروع | colored chalk | طباشير ملون | little | صغير السن |
| climbing | التسلق | imagination | خيال | running | الجري |
| stickers | ملصقات | fun | متعة | best places | أفضل الأماكن |
| together | معًا - سويًا | difficult | صعب | outside | بالخارج |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Present | | Past | P.P | Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| practice | يتدرب | practiced | practiced | hurt | يؤلم / يؤذي | hurt | hurt |
| like | يحب | liked | liked | hide | يختبئ | hid | hidden |
| prefer | يفضل | preferred | preferred | draw | يرسم | drew | drawn |
| start | يبدأ | started | started | think | يعتقد / يفكر | thought | thought |
| get | يحصل على | got | got | ride | يركب | rode | ridden |
| fall off | يقع | fell off | fallen off | wear | يرتدي | wore | worn |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| good at + (v + ing /noun) | جيد في | prefer | + v - ing | يفضل |
| at all | إطلاقًا | like | + v - ing | يحب |
| make up stories | يؤلف قصص | enjoy | + v - ing | يستمتع ب |
| for a long time | لفترة طويلة | quite | | إلى حد ما |
| play with | يلعب مع | look like | | يشبه |



Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Lesson (2)

### Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Sarah : Hi Rania, have you started the project about toys and games yet?

مرحبًا رانيا، هل بدأتِ مشروع لعب الأطفال والألعاب بعد؟

Rania : Hi Sarah. Yes, I started it on the weekend. It's **really** interesting!

مرحبًا سارة. نعم، لقد بدأته في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع. إنه مثير للاهتمام حقًا!

Sarah : Yes, it is. What games did you like playing when you were younger?

نعم إنه كذلك. ما هي الألعاب التي كنت تحبين لعبها عندما كنتِ أصغر سنًا؟

Rania : I thought **hide and seek** was fun. I was **very** good at hiding!

اعتقدت أن الغميضة كانت ممتعة. لقد كنت جيدة جدًا في الاختباء!

Sarah : I was good at it, too! I could hide for a **very** long time. I also **really** liked playing **hopscotch** with my friends. We used different colored chalk to draw the squares.

لقد كنت جيدة في ذلك أيضًا! كنت أستطيع الاختباء لفترة طويلة جدًا. أنا أيضًا أحببت حقًا لعب الحجلة مع أصدقائي. استخدمنا طباشيرًا بألوان مختلفة لرسم المربعات.

Rania : I thought hopscotch was **quite** good, but I preferred **skipping**.

كنت أظن أن الحجلة جيدة جدًا، لكنني كنت أفضل نط الحبل.

Sarah : I liked skipping, but I wasn't **very** good at it. Some skipping games are **so** difficult!

كنت أحب نط الحبل، لكنني لم أكن جيدة في ذلك. بعض ألعاب نط الحبل صعبة للغاية!

Rania : Yes, they are. I had to practice a lot with my sister!

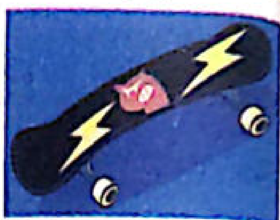
نعم إنها كذلك. كان علي أن أتدرب كثيرًا مع أختي!

Sarah : Ah, my brother didn't practice with me. He didn't like skipping at all! We often played marbles together, though.

آه، أخي لم يتدرب معي. لم يكن يحب نط الحبل على الإطلاق! رغم ذلك، كنا نلعب البلي معًا في كثير من الأحيان.

### Read again. Write T (True) or F (False).

1. Sarah wasn't good at hide and seek. ( )
2. Rania thinks skipping is better than hopscotch. ( )
3. Rania and her sister practiced skipping together. ( )
4. Sarah played marbles with her sister. ( )



## Look and read the description.

**My Favorite Toy** *by Youssef*

When I was younger, my favorite toy was my skateboard. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends. They had skateboards, too, and it was **really** good fun. We all wanted to go **so** fast! My skateboard was black, with orange and yellow stickers on it. I had to wear a helmet and knee pads. It **really** hurts if you fall off a skateboard! I got my first skateboard when I was eight, and it was **quite** small. I don't use it at all now, because I have a bigger one.

عندما كنت أصغر سناً، كانت لعبتي المفضلة هي لوح التزلج. كنت أحب الذهاب إلى الحديقة واللعب مع أصدقائي. كان لديهم ألواح تزلج أيضًا، وكان الأمر ممتعًا حقًا. أردنا جميعا أن نسير بسرعه جدًا! كان لوح التزلج الخاص بي أسود اللون وعليه ملصقات برتقالية وصفراء. اضطررت إلى ارتداء خوذة ووسادات للركبة. إنه أمر مؤلم حقًا إذا سقطت من على لوح التزلج! حصلت على أول لوح تزلج عندما كنت في الثامنة من عمري، وكان صغيرًا إلى حد ما. أنا لا أستخدمه على الإطلاق الآن، لأن لدي واحد أكبر.

## Look and read.



When Amina was little, she really liked games that used a lot of imagination. She was very good at making up stories. She had a doll's house, some cuddly toys, and some action figures.

عندما كانت أمينة صغيرة، كانت تحب جدًا الألعاب التي تستخدم الكثير من الخيال. كانت جيدة جدًا في تأليف القصص. كان لديها بيت دمية، وبعض الألعاب المحشوة، وبعض الشخصيات الحركية.



Nour really enjoyed playing outside when she was younger. She liked running, climbing, and playing tennis. She was quite good at football, too.

كانت نور تستمتع حقًا باللعب في الخارج عندما كانت أصغر سنًا. كانت تحب الجري والتسلق ولعب التنس. لقد كانت جيدة جدًا في كرة القدم أيضًا.

## Look, ask and answer.





What did you enjoy playing when you were younger?

ما الذي كنت تستمتع بلعبه عندما كنت أصغر سنًا؟

I really enjoyed riding my bike.

كنت أستمتع جدًا بركوب دراجتي.





Help your child look and read.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ.



# Intensifiers

المقويات - المعززات

- We use intensifiers to give a stronger meaning to adjectives and verbs.
نستخدم المقويات لإعطاء معنى أقوى للصفات والأفعال.

1 لتقوية الصفة نستخدم (very , really و so) قبل الصفة.

e.g. I was **really / very** good at hiding.
Some skipping games are **so** difficult.

2 لتقوية الفعل نستخدم (really) قبل الفعل.

e.g. I **really** liked playing hopscotch.

3 نستخدم (at all) مع الجمل المنفية وتأتي في نهاية الجملة.

e.g. He **didn't** like skipping **at all**!

4 نستخدم (quite) لجعل الصفة أقل قوة.

e.g. She was **quite** good at football.

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I ........................ liked playing with cuddly toys when I was younger.
   a) really b) very c) so d) at all
2. My brother was ........................ good at football. He always beat me!
   a) much b) more c) very d) at all
3. I ........................ enjoyed playing marbles with my friends.
   a) very b) so c) really d) quite
4. I don't like skateboarding ........................ .
   a) really b) at all c) very d) so

## 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. He is ........................ (at all) good at tennis.
2. I think hopscotch is ........................ (so) good, but I prefer hide and seek.
3. I don't like playing football ........................ (really).
4. Nadia has ........................ (at all) pretty marbles.
5. I ........................ (very) enjoyed playing board games.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

# General Activities

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Amina really liked ..........................................
   a) games  b) drawing  c) playing  d) painting
2. Amina used a lot of ..........................................
   a) money  b) imagination  c) stories  d) toys
3. She was very good at .......................... up stories.
   a) taking  b) making  c) playing  d) reading
4. Amina had a .......................... house.
   a) dog's  b) toy's  c) doll's  d) cat's

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I like playing .......................... . I'm very good at hiding.
   a) football  b) hide and seek  c) skipping  d) tennis
2. We use colored .......................... to draw squares to play hopscotch.
   a) pencils  b) pens  c) chalk  d) stone
3. I always wear a .......................... when I play with my skateboard.
   a) hat  b) cap  c) helmet  d) jacket
4. My sister liked .......................... and climbing.
   a) running  b) run  c) runs  d) ran
5. What were you good .......................... ?
   a) in  b) at  c) on  d) for

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**playing - outside - bigger - younger - quite**

I'm Nour. I really enjoyed playing 1) .............. when I was 2) ..................
I liked running, climbing and 3) .......................... tennis. I was 4) ..................
good at football, too.


Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## Lesson (2)



### Read the text and answer the questions.

When I was younger, my favorite toy was my skateboard. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends. They had skateboards, too, and it was really good fun. We all wanted to go so fast! My skateboard was black, with orange and yellow stickers on it. I had to wear a helmet and knee pads. It really hurts if you fall off a skateboard! I got my first skateboard when I was eight, and it was quite small. I don't use it at all now, because I have a bigger one.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The text is about my favorite ................................ .
   a) story b) toy c) book d) sport
2. I played it at the ................................ .
   a) school b) club c) park d) street
3. My first skateboard was ................................ small.
   a) very b) really c) quite d) so

**Answer the following questions.**

4. Who did you play with? ................................
5. What happens if you fall off a skateboard? ................................

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. quite - Skateboarding - good - is - .

................................................................

2. didn't - train sets - Asser - at - like - all - .

................................................................

### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Sarah ................................(very) enjoys playing marbles.
2. I don't like playing tennis ................................(quite) .
3. I think hopscotch is ....................(at all) good, but I prefer hide and seek.
4. I ................................(so) like running.

### 7 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

**Your favorite toy**

**Guiding elements:**

( skateboard - park )

# Lesson (3) WE LOVED PLAYING WITH OUR TRAIN SET

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| parents | الوالدان | boat | قارب |
| market | سوق | amazing | |
| plane | طائرة | posters | |
| store | متجر - محل | machine | |
| stall | كشك - دكان صغير | cloth | |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|
| shop | يتسوق | shopped | shopped |
| move | يتحرك | moved | moved |
| imagine | يتخيل | imagined | imagined |
| continue | يستمر | continued | continued |
| share | يشارك | shared | shared |
| paint | يدهن - يلون | painted | painted |
| tidy up | يرتب | tidied up | tidied up |
| hate | يكره | hated | hated |
| finish | ينهي | finished | finished |

### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|
| buy | يشتري | bought | bought |
| show | يبين / يظهر / يوضح | showed | shown |
| fly | يطير | flew | flown |
| break | يكسر | broke | broken |
| say | يقول | said | said |



Help your child identify these words.

ـ أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Lesson (3)

### Definitions

تعريفات

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **stall** | a large table that you use to sell things from at a market | كشك - دكانة صغيرة |
| **button** | what you touch to make a machine work | زر |
| **trunk** | the long nose of an elephant | (خرطوم / زلومة) الفيل |
| **sail** | strong pieces of cloth that make a boat move | شراع |

### Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.



Ali was shopping with his parents at the market . He saw a stall that sold toys. A man showed him how a train moved. Ali thought the toys were amazing. Ali's dad came to see the toys, too. He liked the train, so he bought it. He said Ali could play with it.

كان علي يتسوق مع والديه في السوق. رأى كشكًا يبيع الألعاب. بين له رجل كيف يتحرك القطار. اعتقد علي أن الألعاب كانت مذهلة. جاء والد علي ليرى الألعاب أيضًا. لقد أحب القطار فاشتراه. قال إن علي يمكنه اللعب به.



### Read again and answer.

1. What was Ali doing?

..........................................................................................

2. Did Ali like the toys?

..........................................................................................

3. Who bought the toy?

..........................................................................................



## verb + (verb + ing)

**Some verbs are followed by verb + ing:** ...الأفعال يتبعها (فعل + ing):

| like | يحب | continue | يستمر في | love | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| finish | ينهي | enjoy | يستمتع بـ | imagine | |
| hate | يكره | stop | يتوقف عن | prefer | |

e.g. I **enjoy looking** at the market stalls.
I **stopped playing** with my train set a few years ago.

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ali loves .................................................. footb
   a) play b) plays c) playing d) played
2. Do you enjoy .................................................. in the se
   a) swim b) swimming c) swims d) swam
3. Last night I finished .................................. my homework at 8 p
   a) to do b) did c) does d) doing
4. Amal imagined .................................................. in a pla
   a) to fly b) flew c) flying d) fly

### 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brack

1. Ghada prefers .................................. (play) board gam
2. My sister stopped ......(let) me share her doll's house because I brok
3. They finished .................................. (paint) the posters and tidied
4. Does he enjoy .................................. (read) adventure boo
5. Ali likes .................................. (shop) at the mar
6. On weekends I hate .................................. (get) up ea
7. I think people should stop .................. (throw) rubbish in the stre
8. You should continue .................................. (


Help your child use verbs followed by v+ing.
طفلك أن يستخدم الأفعال المتبوعة بأفعال + Ing.



# PRONUNCIATION

## "gh"

"gh" sounds like /f/ — تنطق "gh" مثل صوت /f/.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| draughts | لعبة الداما | laughter | الضحك | tough | متين - قاسٍ |
| cough | كحة | laugh | يضحك | enough | كافٍ |

"gh" is silent in most words. — تكون "gh" صامتة "لا تنطق" في معظم الكلمات.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| bought | اشترى | drought | جفاف | high | مرتفع - عالٍ |
| thought | اعتقد / فكرَ | eight | رقم ثمانية | daughter | ابنة |
| night | ليلة | brought | أحضر | | |

**Then listen again and repeat.**



This game is called draughts.
We laugh when we play draughts.



Wael bought some marbles yesterday.



She thought about the toy that she bought.



A drought is when there isn't enough rain.

**Do these words have the sound /f/? Circle Y (Yes) or N (No).**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. laughed | Y / N | 5. thought | Y / N |
| 2. bought | Y / N | 6. coughed | Y / N |
| 3. drought | Y / N | 7. enough | Y / N |
| 4. daughter | Y / N | 8. brought | Y / N |

Help your child how to say words with "gh".
ساعد طفلك كيف ينطق كلمات بها حرفي "gh".



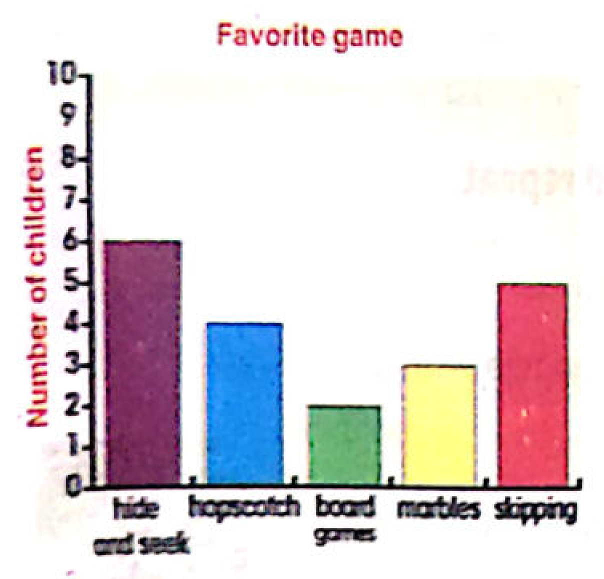

## Using Graphs

استخدام الرسم البياني (المخطط)




الرسم البياني الشريطي (بالأعمدة)

This bar graph shows the favorite game in our class.




1. How many children like skipping?

..........................................................

2. Which game has the most studen

..........................................................

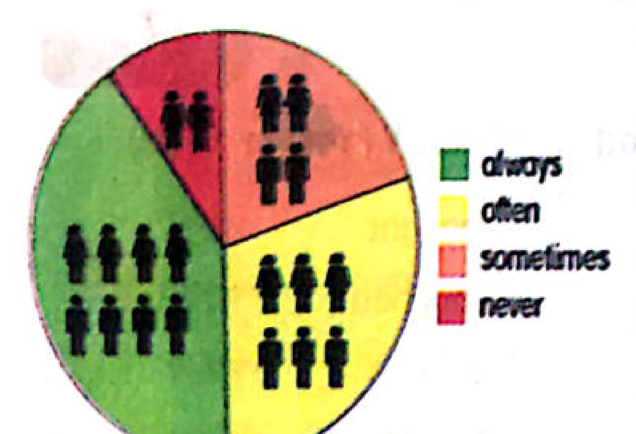
3. Which game is liked the least?

..........................................................




المخطط الدائري

This pie chart shows how often children in our class play computer games on the weekend.




1. Which group is the biggest?

..........................................................

2. Which group is the smallest?

..........................................................

3. What's the total of numbers?

..........................................................



Help your child identify and use graphs.

طفلك أن يتعرف على المخططات البيانية ويستخدمها.

# Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ali was .................................................... with his parents at the market.
   a) playing b) shopping c) writing d) running
2. He saw a .................................................... that sold toys.
   a) stall b) supermarket c) mall d) store
3. A .................................................... showed him how a train moved.
   a) girl b) boy c) woman d) man
4. Ali thought the toys were .................................................... .
   a) boring b) amazed c) amazing d) small

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A .................................................... is the long nose of an elephant.
   a) leg b) trunk c) sail d) stall
2. We go shopping at the .................................................... .
   a) school b) club c) market d) park
3. My sister likes toys. They're .................................................... .
   a) amazing b) amazed c) bad d) interested
4. To make a toy move, you press this .................................................... .
   a) bottle b) button c) butter d) wheel
5. A .............................. is a strong piece of cloth that makes a boat move.
   a) sale b) sell c) sail d) soil
6. A .................................................... is when there isn't enough rain.
   a) drought b) draught c) laughter d) laugh

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

button - set - school - market - stall

Yesterday I went shopping with my mom. We went to the 1) ................ . There were a lot of toys at a 2) ................... . I liked a train 3) ................... . It has 4) ................... to make it move. My mom liked it, so we bought it.



## Read the text and answer the questions.

Ali is a student. He is in grade six. He went shopping with his pare at the market yesterday. He saw a stall that sold toys. A man showed how a train moved. He thought the toys were amazing. Ali's dad cam see the toys, too. He liked the train, so he bought it. He said Ali could with it.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Ali is in grade ..............................

   a) 3    b) 4    c) 5    d) 6

2. The word "amazing" is similar to ..............................

   a) terrible    b) fantastic    c) good    d) interested

3. The underlined pronoun "He" refers to ..............................

   a) Ali    b) Ali's mom    c) Ali's dad    d) the seller

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. When did Ali go shopping? ..............................
5. Where did he buy the toy from? ..............................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences

1. laugh - play - We - draughts - when - we - .

..............................

2. imagined - in - Aya - flying - plane - a - .

..............................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between bracke

1. I didn't finish ..............................(do) my homew
2. You should stop ..............................(eat) too many swe
3. I hate ..............................(watch)
4. My sister, Sarah, loves ..............................(paint) flow
5. I can't imagine ..............................(live) on the mo
6. People should continue ..............................(lear



Help your child deal with such questions.

طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

# Lessons (4 & 5)

# WRITING: A DESCRIPTION OF MY FAVORITE GAME

## Vocabulary

الكلمات

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| description | وصف | bricks | طوب |
| video games | ألعاب الفيديو | creative | مبدع - إبداعي |
| outside | بالخارج | adventure | مغامرة |
| dice | حجر النرد (الزهر) | kind = type = sort | نوع |
| different | مختلف | important | هام |
| although - though | بالرغم من - ومع ذلك | images = graphics | صور - رسومات |
| games console | وحدة تحكم ألعاب | modern | حديث - معاصر |

## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

| Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|
| solve | يحل | solved | solved |
| call | يُسمى / يُنادى / يتصل | called | called |
| design | يصمم | designed | designed |
| find | يجد | found | found |
| build | يبني | built | built |

## Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| solve a problem | يحل مشكلة | an hour a day | ساعة في اليوم |
| about an hour | حوالي ساعة | too much | كثيرًا جدًا |
| build cities | يبني مدنًا | share with | يتشارك مع |
| once a week | مرة في الأسبوع | | |

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

### My favorite video game

***by Belal***



I love playing all kinds of games. I play games outside with my friends, and at school we play hopscotch and board games. I also enjoy playing board games with my sister, although she often beats me!

ب لعب جميع أنواع الألعاب. ألعب الألعاب في الخارج مع أصدقائي، وفي المدرسة نلعب الحجلة والألعاب اللوحية. أنا أستمتع أيضًا ب الألعاب اللوحية مع أختي، على الرغم من أنها غالبًا ما تهزمني!

My favorite games are video games. I don't play them very ofte though. I play for about an hour on the weekend. It's fun! My favori games are ones where you build cities. I've made a really big city usin different bricks. It has animals and plants in it, too. I **like** these game **because** you can be creative and make something new.

ابي المفضلة هي ألعاب الفيديو. ومع ذلك أنا لا ألعبهم كثيرًا. ألعب لمدة ساعة تقريبًا في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع. إنه أمر ممتع! ألعابي ـفضلة هي تلك التي تقوم فيها ببناء المدن. لقد صنعت مدينة كبيرة جدًا باستخدام طوب مختلف. وفيها حيوانات ونباتات أيضًا. أحب ه الألعاب لأنه يمكنك أن تكون مبدعًا وتصنع شيئًا جديدًا.

Some of the images in modern video games are amazing. I've g a new **games console**, which I share with my sister. She enjoys playin adventure games, where you can go to different places to find somethin important or solve a problem. They can be difficult, but I **think** they can b fun, too, **because** they're so exciting.

ض الصور في ألعاب الفيديو الحديثة مذهلة. لقد حصلت على وحدة تحكم ألعاب جديدة، وأتشاركها مع أختي. إنها تستمتع بلعب ـاب المغامرة، حيث يمكنك الذهاب إلى أماكن مختلفة للعثور على شيء مهم أو حل مشكلة. يمكن أن تكون صعبة ولكن أعتقد أنها كن أن تكون ممتعة أيضًا، لأنها مثيرة للغاية.

Video games can be a problem when you play them too muc However, I think they can be great when you do something that is ve creative or exciting. You can often play with your friends, too.

كن أن تشكل ألعاب الفيديو مشكلة عندما تلعبها كثيرًا. ومع ذلك، أعتقد أنها يمكن أن تكون رائعة عندما تفعل شيئًا إبداعيًا أو مثيرًا ـاية. يمكنك غالبًا اللعب مع أصدقائك أيضًا.



**Read the description again and circle the correct answer.**

1. Belal plays **(board games / hopscotch)** with his sister.
2. Belal's favorite video games are ones where you build **(plants / cities)**.
3. Some of the **(consoles / graphics)** in modern video games are amazin



Help your child read about a description of a game.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن وصف لعبة.




## Opinion & Reason

الرأي والسبب

- عند التعبير عن الرأي نستخدم أفعال مثل: (like - think)
- عند التعبير عن السبب نستخدم (because)

.g. I **like** these games **because** you can be creative and make something new.

I **think** they can be fun, too, **because** they're so exciting.

### How to write a description of a game

- عند كتابة وصف للعبة، قم بكتابة بعض الملاحظات والأفكار.
- استخدم كلمات تعبر عن الرأي والسبب الذي جعلك تحبها.

### My favorite game

**Jse these notes:**

| | |
|---|---|
| What is it called? | Chess |
| How do you play it? | Move the pieces on the squares |
| How often do you play it? | Twice a week |
| Who do you play with? | My brother |
| Why do you like it? | It makes me think and be smart. |

I love playing all kinds of games. My favorite game is chess. t's a board game with white and black squares. I play it with my rother. We play it twice a week after school. A player can only move ne piece at a time to the square of the other player. I like this game ecause it makes me think and be smart. I think it is a fun game ecause it's exciting.

elp your child write about his favorite game.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن لعبته المفضلة.

# General Activities

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My favorite games are ........................................
   a) hopscotch b) computer games c) draughts d) video g
2. I play for about ........................................ on the wee
   a) a while b) all day c) an hour d) 30 min
3. My favorite games are ones where you ........................................
   a) plant b) do c) make d) build
4. It has ........................................ and plants in
   a) animals b) people c) birds d) fish

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Some of the ........................ in modern video games are am
   a) consoles b) images c) boards d) wires
2. I enjoy playing games where I find something ........................
   a) important b) boring c) tiring d) ugly
3. Video games are ........................................ when they are cre
   a) dirty b) bad c) great d) damage
4. I have got a new games ........................ ; which I share with my
   a) console b) box c) image d) draught

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**playing - hide - ride - outside - fun**

I like playing games. I always play 1) .................. with my friends. love playing 2) ..................... and seek. We also enjoy 3) ..................... b games. I think they can be 4) ..................... because they're so exciting.



Help your child deal with such questions.

لك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.





## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Some of the images in modern video games are amazing. I've got a new games console, which I share with my sister. She enjoys playing adventure games, where you can go to different places to find something important or solve a problem. They can be difficult but I think they can be fun, too, because they're so exciting. Video games can be a problem when you play them too much. However, I think they can be great when you do something that is very creative or exciting. You can often play with your friends, too.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The word "images" is similar in meaning to ............................................ .
   a) **graphics** b) **games** c) **graphs** d) **sports**
2. Video games can be fun because they're so ............................................ .
   a) **boring** b) **excited** c) **amazed** d) **exciting**
3. You can often play with your ............................................................ .
   a) **parents** b) **grandparents** c) **friends** d) **cousins**

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. What kind of games does your sister like? ............................................
5. How can video games be a problem? ............................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. love - all - I - playing - games - kinds of - .

............................................................................................................

2. your - game - What - favorite - is - ?

............................................................................................................

## 6 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

**Your favorite video game**

**Guiding elements:**

- **What's it called?**
- **How do you play it?**
- **Why do you like it?**

# Writing Corner

## My favorite toy

When I was younger, my favorite toy was my skateboard. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends. My skateboard was blue w yellow stickers on it. I had to wear a helmet and knee pads. I got my fi skateboard when I was ten on my birthday. I loved it very much.

## The games I enjoyed

When I was little, I really liked games and playing outside. I enjoy riding my bike, running and playing tennis. I was very good at making stories. I had some cuddly toys and some action figures. I was quite go at football. I also really liked playing hopscotch with my friends.

## Going shopping

Yesterday I went shopping with my parents at the market. I saw a stall that sold toys. A man showed me how a train set moved. I thoug the toys were amazing. My mom liked the train set, so she bought it for m I was very happy because I like playing with my toys.

## Playing

Playing is good for us in many different ways. When we play, we fe happy. We also learn about the world and ourselves. When we play, learn to solve problems and make friends. From early times people play different games. In Ancient Egypt people played a game called senet. like chess. People often play to relax themselves and enjoy their time.



Help your child write paragraphs.

طفلك أن يكتب فقرات.

# Review on Unit (8)

## Vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| marbles | البلي | doll's house | بيت الدمية | skateboard | لوح التزلج |
| cuddly toy | لعبة محشوة | rollerblades | حذاء التزلج (زلاجات) | bricks | طوب |
| skipping | نط الحبل | images = graphics | صور - رسومات | modern | حديث |
| train set | لعبة القطار | games console | وحدة ألعاب | adventure | مغامرة |
| market | سوق | although - though | بالرغم من - ومع ذلك | creative | مبدع |
| posters | ملصقات | hide and seek | الاستغماية | stall | كشك |
| description | وصف | video games | ألعاب الفيديو | parents | الوالدان |
| outside | بالخارج | action figure | شخصية حركية | board game | لعبة لوحية |
| machine | آلة | hopscotch | لعبة المربعات (الحجلة) | amazing | مذهل |

## Pronunciation

**"gh"** sounds like **/f/** — تنطق "gh" مثل صوت /f/.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| draughts | لعبة الداما | laughter | الضحك | tough | متين - قاسٍ |
| cough | كحة / يكح | laugh | يضحك | enough | كافٍ |

**"gh"** is silent in most words. — تكون "gh" صامته "لا تنطق" في معظم الكلمات.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| bought | اشترى | drought | جفاف | high | مرتفع - عالٍ |
| thought | أعتقد / فكّر | eight | رقم ثمانية | daughter | ابنة |
| night | ليلة | brought | أحضر | | |

## Language

**1) Intensifiers: (really / very / so + adj.) (really + verb) (Negative نفي + at all)**

e.g. I was **really / very** good at hiding.

I didn't like skipping **at all**.

**2) Verbs followed by (verb + -ing):**

**(continue - finish - hate - imagine - like - prefer - stop)**

e.g. I enjoy **playing** football.

I prefer **making** up stories.

# Dictation on Unit (8)

## Lesson (1)

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ـصية حركية | ............................ | ألعاب أطفال | ............................ |
| ـرب | ............................ | لعبة لوحية | ............................ |
| ـئ | ............................ | لعبة القطار | ............................ |
| ـران | ............................ | يبحث عن | ............................ |
| ـة محشوة | ............................ | كثير من | ............................ |
| ـنرع | ............................ | منزل الدُّمي | ............................ |
| ـج التزلج | ............................ | حذاء التزلج (زلاجات) | ............................ |

## Lesson (2)

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ـيعات | ............................ | لعبة الاستغماية | ............................ |
| ـفضل | ............................ | الحجلة | ............................ |
| ـبل | ............................ | نط الحبل | ............................ |
| ـلف قصص | ............................ | إطلاقًا | ............................ |
| ـبري | ............................ | مشروع | ............................ |
| ـوذة | ............................ | عطلة نهاية الأسبوع | ............................ |

## Lesson (3)

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ـرطوم / زلومة) الفيل | ............................ | التسوق | ............................ |
| ـتمر | ............................ | سوق | ............................ |
| ـخيل | ............................ | كشك - دكانة صغيرة | ............................ |
| ـغاف | ............................ | زر | ............................ |
| ـبة الداما | ............................ | شراع | ............................ |

## Lessons (4 & 5)

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ـحدة ألعاب | ............................ | وصف | ............................ |
| ـور - رسومات | ............................ | يهزم | ............................ |
| ـبدع | ............................ | ألعاب الفيديو | ............................ |
| ـني | ............................ | بالخارج | ............................ |
| ـغامرة | ............................ | مشكلة | ............................ |



Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

# Activities on Unit (8)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. When I was younger, I had a box of .................................................. .
   a) cakes  b) toys  c) marbles  d) games
2. I had a go on my .................................................. .
   a) skateboard  b) rollerblades  c) bike  d) car
3. My .................................................. liked playing with a doll's house.
   a) sister  b) brother  c) mom  d) dad
4. My brother usually .................................. me when we played board games.
   a) paint  b) laugh  c) hit  d) beat

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I .................................................. lots of stories.
   a) made up  b) made in  c) made of  d) made for
2. You can go quite fast on .................................................. .
   a) hopscotch  b) rollerblades  c) train set  d) board games
3. My brother is really good at .................................................. and seek.
   a) cuddly  b) action  c) hide  d) ride
4. There are some wooden toys on the toy .................................................. .
   a) bank  b) stall  c) steel  d) sail

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**creative - hour - week - play - because**

My favorite games are video games. I don't 1) ........................ them very often, though. I play for an 2) .................. on the weekend. I like these games 3) ......................... you can be 4) ......................... and make something new.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Video games have become one of the most popular games. All chi
play them. I like all kinds of games. I have a good time playing with my frie
Some of the images in modern video games are amazing. I've got a new ga
console. I like playing adventure games where you can go to different plac
find something important or solve a problem. However, video games can b
a problem when you play them too much.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The text is about ..........................................................
   **a) football b) video games c) board games d) tennis**
2. Don't play video games for a .......................................... tir
   **a) short b) long c) much d) good**
3. The underlined word "modern" in the text is opposite to ..................
   **a) new b) old c) long d) small**

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to? ..........................
5. Summarize the text in one sentence. ..........................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences

1. football - think - I - so - is - exciting - . ..........................
2. didn't - train sets - Adam - at all - like - . ..........................
3. games - were - What - you - at - good - ? ..........................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brack

1. I prefer .......................................... (play) board games to skipp
2. I think hopscotch is ..................... (at all) good, but I prefer hide and se

## 7 Punctuate the following.

- hide and seek is really interesting ..........................................

## 8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

**Your favorite toys**

**Guiding elements:**

( doll's house - action figure )



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

# Al-Azhar Corner

## 1 Read and complete the dialog with the following words.

**rollerblades - box - playing - action - What**

Omar : Did you visit your grandma yesterday?
Adam : Yes, I did. I found a 1)........................................ of my old toys.
Omar : 2) ................................................................ did you find in there?
Adam : There was an 3)................................................................ figure.
Omar : I loved 4)........................................................ with action figures.
Adam : What's your favorite toy?
Omar : I like 5)........................................................................ .

## Read and complete the dialog with the following words.

**good - enjoy - fine - up - really**

Sarah : Hi, Mona. How are you?
Mona : Hi, Sarah. I'm 1)............................................................................
Sarah : What did you 2)........................ playing when you were younger?
Mona : I 3)........................................................ enjoyed riding my bike.
Sarah : What were you 4)............................................................... at?
Mona : I was very good at making 5)........................................ stories.

## 2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | shopping | Cairo | working | swimming | (.......................) |
| 2. | mom | uncle | dad | brother | (.......................) |
| 3. | stall | market | play | shop | (.......................) |
| 4. | skipping | hide and seek | bank | hopscotch | (.......................) |
| 5. | apples | doll's house | marbles | skateboard | (.......................) |

## Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | cuddly toy | train set | marbles | running | (.......................) |
| 2. | enjoy | book | prefer | like | (.......................) |
| 3. | but | really | very | so | (.......................) |
| 4. | yellow | game | red | green | (.......................) |
| 5. | running | climbing | bike | cycling | (.......................) |

# Unit 9

# What's the story?

**In this unit, the students will ...**

- listen and read about Goha and his stories.
- understand and discuss what makes a good story.
- use the past continuous.
- write the beginning and ending of a short story.
- listen to a short story about a boy and a wolf.
- use sequencing adverbs.
- learn how to say words with the sound /w/.
- take part in a cooperative storytelling project.

# GOHA'S STORIES

## Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| setting | narrator | راوي |
| characters | moral | مغزى - عبرة - الدرس المستفاد |
| ending | story | قصة |

## Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| man | clever | ماهر |
| son | great | عظيم |
| review | details | تفاصيل |
| market | difference | اختلاف |
| countryside | popular | شعبي - محبوب |
| journey | known | معروف |
| let | country | دولة |
| different | Sudan | السودان |
| should | Algeria | الجزائر |
| must be | Morocco | دولة المغرب |
| tired | main | أساسي - رئيسي |
| both | | |

## Definitions

تعريفات

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **characters** | the people or animals in a story | الشخصيات |
| **ending** | the last part of a story | خاتمة - نهاية |
| **setting** | the time and place where a story happens | المكان والزمان |
| **moral** | the lesson you learn from a story | مغزى - عبرة - الدرس المستفاد |
| **narrator** | the person who tells the story | راوي |

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|
| carry | يحمل | carried | carried |
| pass | يمر | passed | passed |
| happen | يحدث | happened | happened |
| want | يريد | wanted | wanted |
| love | يُحب | loved | loved |

### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|
| write | يكتب | wrote | written |
| go | يذهب | went | gone |
| ride | يركب | rode | ridden |
| give | يعطي | gave | given |
| teach | يُعلم | taught | taught |
| let | يسمح / يدع | let | let |
| know | يعرف | knew | known |

### Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| many years ago | منذ عدة سنوات | take turns | يتبادل الأدوار |
| So do I. | وأنا أيضا (كذلك). | all over the world | في كل أنحاء العالم |
| the same | نفس الشيء | (be) right about that | على حق في ذلك |
| write about | يكتب عن | take place in | يحدث في |

### Did you know?

People have told stories for thousands of years.

The Ancient Egyptians **carved** pictures to tell stories.

لقد روى الناس القصص منذ آلاف السنين. لقد نحت المصريون القدماء الصور لرواية القصص.





Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Lesson (1)

**Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.



### Why do the man and his son carry the donkey?

Mom : What are you doing, Lama?
ماذا تفعلين يا لاما؟

Lama : I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories. The one about a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The **setting** is the countryside, many years ago. Two of the **characters** – the man and his son – take turns riding the donkey because it's a long journey. When the boy rides the donkey, the people they pass say he should let his father ride. When the man rides the donkey, they say that he should let his son have a turn. Then, they say the donkey must be tired. So, in the **ending** of the story, they both carry the donkey!
أنا أكتب مقالة نقدية لإحدى قصص جحا. قصة الرجل الذي يذهب إلى السوق ومعه ابنه وحماره. المكان هو الريف، والزمان منذ سنوات عديدة. يتناوب اثنان من الشخصيات – الرجل وابنه – على ركوب الحمار لأنها رحلة طويلة. عندما يركب الصبي الحمار، يقول الناس الذين يمرون إنه يجب أن يترك والده يركب. عندما يركب الرجل الحمار، يقولون إنه يجب أن يترك ابنه يأخذ دوره. ثم يقولون إن الحمار بالتأكيد مُتعب. لذلك في نهاية القصة كلاهما يحمل الحمار!

Mom : Haha! His stories are both funny and clever, aren't they?
هاها! قصصه مضحكة وذكية، أليس كذلك؟

Lama : Yes, they are. He's a great **narrator**, too. I love the details he gives about the characters, the setting, and everything that happens.
نعم هي كذلك. إنه راوي عظيم أيضًا. أحب التفاصيل التي يقدمها عن الشخصيات والمكان والزمان وكل ما يحدث.

Mom : So do I. In fact, his stories are popular all over the world. But he's known by different names. For example, in Sudan, he's Jawha. In Algeria, he's Jeha, and in Morocco, he's Jha.
وأنا أيضًا. في الواقع، تحظى قصصه بشعبية في جميع أنحاء العالم. لكنه معروف بأسماء مختلفة. على سبيل المثال، في السودان، هو جوحا. في الجزائر اسمه جيحا، وفي المغرب جها.

Lama : Are the stories the same in every country? هل القصص نفس الشيء في كل بلد؟

Mom : There are some differences, but they all have a **moral** that Goha wants to teach us. What do you think is the moral of this story?
هناك بعض الاختلافات ولكنها جميعًا بها مغزى يريد جحا تعليمه. في رأيك ما مغزى هذه القصة؟

Lama : That you can't make everyone happy. أنه لا يمكنك إسعاد الجميع.

Mom : I think Goha is right about that! أعتقد أن جحا على حق في ذلك!

Lama : Me, too. I'm happy that I know which story to write about, though!
وأنا أيضاً. أنا سعيدة لأنني أعرف أي قصة سأكتب عنها، رغم ذلك!

Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

# General Activities



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'm writing a review of one of Goha's ..........

   a) stories b) books c) plays d) films

2. The story is about a man who goes to the ..........

   a) zoo b) library c) school d) market

3. The .......... is the countryside, many years ago.

   a) ending b) setting c) narrator d) characters

4. The man and his son take turns riding the ..........

   a) bus b) bike c) donkey d) car

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .......... are the people or animals in a story.

   a) Endings b) Characters c) Settings d) Narrators

2. The .......... is the time and place where a story happens.

   a) setting b) ending c) moral d) character

3. The .......... is the lesson you learn from a story.

   a) moral b) character c) setting d) ending

4. The .......... is the person who tells the story.

   a) ending b) character c) setting d) narrator

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

man - setting - characters - journey - donkey

I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories. The one about a 1) .......... who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The 2) .......... is the countryside, many years ago. Two of the 3) .......... – the man and his son – take turns riding the donkey because it's a long 4) ..........



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 4 Read the text then answer the questions.

I'm Lama. I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories. The one about a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The setting is the countryside, many years ago. Two of the characters – the man and his son – take turns riding the donkey because it's a long journey. When the boy rides the donkey, the people they pass say he should let his father ride. When the man rides the donkey, they say that he should let his son have a turn. Then, they say the donkey must be tired. So, in the ending of the story, they both carry the donkey! In Goha's stories there is a moral. The moral in this story is that you can't make everyone happy.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Lama is writing a .................................................. of one of Goha's stories.
   a) **review** b) **homework** c) **notebook** d) **search**
2. The underlined pronoun "he" refers to .................................................. .
   a) **Goha** b) **son** c) **Lama** d) **donkey**
3. The man and his son are the .................................................. of the story.
   a) **setting** b) **characters** c) **narrators** d) **endings**

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. What is the moral of this story? ..................................................
5. What do they do at the end of the story? ..................................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. are - main - There - two - characters - the - in - story - .
   ..................................................
2. the stories - same - Are - the - every - in - country - ?
   ..................................................
3. known - Goha - as - in - Jha - is - Morocco - .
   ..................................................

## 6 Punctuate the following.

- why do the man and his son carry the donkey ..................................................

## 7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

**Your favorite story**

**Guiding elements:**

( Goha - man - market - donkey)

# Lesson (2) A MESSAGE IN A BOTTLE

## Key vocabulary ـات أساسية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| message | رسالة | grandparents | الأجداد | bottle | ـاجة |
| surf | يركب الأمواج | beginning | بداية | important event | ـث مهم |

## Extra vocabulary ـات إضافية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| near | قريب | granddad | جد | forest | ـابة |
| quiet | هادئ | trash | قمامة | path | ـمر |
| beautiful | جميل | better | أفضل | scared | ـائف |
| sand | رمل | idea | فكرة | weather | ـقس |
| glass | زجاج | space | فضاء | | |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

**Regular verbs** أفعال منتظمة — **Irregular verbs** أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | P.P | Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| surf | يركب الأمواج | surfed | surfed | put | يضع | put | put |
| fold | يطوي | folded | folded | throw | يلقي / يرمي | threw | thrown |
| arrive | يصل | arrived | arrived | ring | يرن | rang | rung |
| watch | يشاهد | watched | watched | grow up | يكبر | grew up | grown up |
| call | يتصل | called | called | forget | ينسى | forgot | forgotten |
| look | ينظر | looked | looked | send | يرسل | sent | sent |
| score | يحرز - يسجل هدف | scored | scored | get | يحصل على | got | got |
| hope | يأمل | hoped | hoped | come | يأتي | came | come |
| follow | يتبع | followed | followed | shine | تشرق - يلمع | shone | shone |

## Important expressions and prepositions ـيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| by the sea | بجوار البحر | one day | ذات يوم | let's + inf | ـيا بنا + (مصدر الفعل) |
| a piece of | قطعة من | come in | يدخل | throw out to sea | ـلقي في البحر |
| back at ..... | بالعودة إلى | walk along | يسير على امتداد | throw into sea | ـلقي في البحر |
| many years passed | مرت سنوات عديدة | | | forget about | ـسى بشأن |



Help your child identify these words.

ـعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Lesson (2)

### Listen and read the beginning of the story.

Tom's grandparents lived by the sea. The beach near their house was quiet and beautiful, and he loved to go there with them. They swam, **surfed**, and played games on the sand.

عاش أجداد توم بجانب البحر. كان الشاطئ بالقرب من منزلهم هادئًا وجميلًا، وكان يحب الذهاب معهم إلى هناك. لقد سبحوا وركبوا الأمواج ولعبوا الألعاب على الرمال.

One day, they were swimming in the sea when Tom saw a glass bottle in the water. "Look, Granddad," he said. "Let's put it in the trash."

في أحد الأيام، كانوا يسبحون في البحر عندما رأى توم زجاجة في الماء. قال: "انظر يا جدي." "هيا بنا نضعها في سلة المهملات."

"I have a better idea," said Granddad. "Let's write a message in a bottle."

قال الجد: "لدي فكرة أفضل." "دعنا نكتب رسالة في زجاجة."

"What's a message in a bottle?" "ما الرسالة التي في الزجاجة؟"

"You write a message on a piece of paper, fold the paper, and put it in the bottle, then throw the bottle out to sea for someone else to find."

"تكتب رسالة على قطعة من الورق، ثم تطوي الورقة وتضعها في الزجاجة، ثم ترمي الزجاجة في البحر ليجدها شخص آخر."

Back at the house, Granddad washed the glass bottle and gave Tom a pen and a piece of paper. Tom was writing his message when Grandma came in the room.

عند عودته إلى المنزل، قام الجد بغسل الزجاجة وأعطى توم قلمًا وقطعة من الورق. كان توم يكتب رسالته عندما دخلت الجدة إلى الغرفة.

"What are you doing, Tom?" asked Grandma. سألت الجدة "ماذا تفعل يا توم؟"

"I'm writing a message in a bottle," answered Tom. "Do you want to read it?"

أجاب توم: "أنا أكتب رسالة في زجاجة". "هل تريدين قراءتها؟"

Hello!
My name's Tom. I'm 11 years old and I'm from the USA.
My favorite things are space, animals, and the color blue.
What are your favorite things? Please email back to tell me!
My email address is tom@beachnet.usa
From Tom



The next day, Tom and his grandparents went to the beach to throw the bottle into the sea.

وفي اليوم التالي، ذهب توم وأجداده إلى الشاطئ لإلقاء الزجاجة في البحر.

Many years passed, and Tom grew up. He and his grandparents forgot about the message in a bottle. Then, one day, Tom was working when Granddad sent him a message....

مرت سنوات عديدة، وكبُر توم. لقد نسي هو وأجداده الرسالة الموجودة في الزجاجة. وفي أحد الأيام، كان توم يعمل عندما أرسل له جده رسالة....

**- Listen and read again. Make notes about the beginning of the story.**

1. The characters are ........................................................ .
2. The setting is ........................................................ .
3. The first important event is ........................................................ .

- Read the start of another story.

My friend Ali and I were playing in the forest yesterday. It was a lovely afternoon and the sun was shining. We were near my home, and we we hoping to see some interesting animals and birds. We were walking alo the path when suddenly we saw a little house in the distance. "Let's and look at the house," said Ali. I was a bit scared and didn't want to g but I followed him. Near the house, there was ... .

أنا وصديقي علي نلعب في الغابة بالأمس. لقد كانت فترة ما بعد الظهر جميلة وكانت الشمس مشرقة. كنا بالقرب من منزلي، وكنا أن نرى بعض الحيوانات والطيور المثيرة للاهتمام. كنا نسير على طول الطريق عندما رأينا فجأة منزلاً صغيراً من بعيد. قال علي: دعنا نذهب وننظر إلى المنزل". كنت خائفًا بعض الشيء ولم أرغب في الذهاب، لكنني تبعته. وبالقرب من المنزل كان هناك ....

- Write a beginning of another story about finding something on a beach. Before you write, make notes to answer the questions.

1. Which beach were you on?..............................................
2. What time of day was it?..............................................
3. Who were you with?..............................................
4. What was the weather like?..............................................
5. What were you doing?..............................................
6. What did you find?..............................................

- Use your notes to write the beginning of your story.

Yesterday, I was on the beach near my house. It was morning and it was sunny. I was walking with my friend when we ..............................................

..............................................

..............................................

- Work in pairs. Role play an interview.

Where were you?

I was on the beach near my house.

What were you doing?

We were swimming.

What was the weather like?

It was sunny.





Help your child deal with such questions.

طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2)




## The Past Continuous Tense

زمن الماضي المستمر

### Usage الاستخدام

- **We use the past continuous in stories to say what was happening at a particular time in the past.**

نستخدم الماضي المستمر في القصص لنقول ما كان يحدث في وقت معين في الماضي.

eg. Yesterday afternoon, John was walking his dog.

- **We can also use the past continuous with *when* and the past simple to show when one action interrupted another in the past:**

يمكننا أيضًا استخدام الماضي المستمر مع الرابط when والماضي البسيط لبيان أن حدث ما قطع حدث آخر في الماضي:

eg. I was reading a book when my dad came.

### Form التكوين

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + was
You / We / They / اسم جمع + were
+ (v + ing).

- I was doing my homework yesterday evening.
- We were playing computer games.

### Negative النفي

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + wasn't
You / We / They / اسم جمع + weren't
+ (v + ing).

- He was not watching TV.
- They weren't riding their bikes.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

was not ⟶ wasn't were not ⟶ weren't

## Question السؤال

### Yes/No question

Was + I / he / she / it / اسم مفرد + (v + ing)?
Were + you / we / they / اسم جمع

- Was Ali swimming? - Yes, he was. - No, he wasn't.
- Were they surfing? - Yes, they were. - No, they weren't.

### Wh- question

Q.W + was + I / he / she / it / اسم مفرد + (v + ing)?
Q.W + were + you / we / they / اسم جمع

- What was she doing? - She was eating.
- What were they doing? - They were playing on the beach.

## Keywords الكلمات الدالة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| at 5 yesterday | في الساعة الخامسة أمس | yesterday evening | مساء أمس |
| yesterday morning | صباح أمس | when | عندما |

When + ماضي بسيط , ماضي مستمر

- When we saw a little house, we were walking along the path.

ماضي مستمر + when + ماضي بسيط

- I was watching TV when you called me.

تذكر

• عندما ينتهي الفعل بحرف الـ (e) غير منطوق (قبله حرف ساكن) تحذف (e) قبل إضافة (ing) .

ride ⟶ riding arrive ⟶ arriving

• إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوقًا بحرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير قبل إضافة (ing) (بشرط أن يكون الفعل مكون من مقطع واحد).

get ⟶ getting swim ⟶ swimming



Help your child to identify the past continuous tense.
• ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على زمن الماضي المستمر.

Lesson (2)



## Practice

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Yesterday morning, Ali .................................................. his homework.
   a) does b) was doing c) did d) doing
2. They were .................................................................... a story.
   a) read b) reads c) reading d) to reading
3. I was eating when the phone ................................................ .
   a) ring b) rings c) rang d) ringing
4. ........................................... you looking at your phone when I saw you?
   a) Was b) Is c) Were d) Are
5. Fatin ................................................................ playing computer games.
   a) was b) were c) does d) did
6. Dad was reading a newspaper when Lina ........................................ .
   a) come b) comes c) was coming d) came

### 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Hamza .................................................. (were) watching a football match.
2. Ayman was ........................................................................ (ride) his bike.
3. Hani was doing his homework ............ (where) he got a text message.
4. Hend and I ............................................. (play) when her father arrived.
5. Aya ............................................................ (not watch) TV when I called her.
6. Ali was driving his car when his phone ........................................ (ring).
7. Sami ............................................................ (were) walking with his friend.
8. What were you .................................................................................. (do)?
9. I was .............................................................................. (walk) along the path.
10. Ali and I ..................................................... (was) playing in the forest.

# General Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Tom is ........................................ years o
   a) ten  b) eleven  c) nine  d) twelve
2. He is from the ........................................
   a) Egypt  b) France  c) Chine  d) USA
3. His favorite things are ..................., animals and the color bl
   a) space  b) plants  c) clothes  d) birds
4. His email ........................................ is tom@beachnet.u
   a) title  b) name  c) address  d) nickname

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I get a text ........................................ from my frie
   a) message  b) ring  c) call  d) tone
2. The bottle is made of .................................. . It's easy to bre
   a) stone  b) wood  c) glass  d) cloth
3. They loved water sports. They .................................. and swa
   a) surfed  b) kicked  c) jumped  d) served
4. I write the message on a piece .................................. pap
   a) in  b) on  c) at  d) of
5. They .................... the bottle out to sea for someone else to fin
   a) get  b) throw  c) read  d) teach
6. Let's ........................................ it in the tras
   a) put  b) puts  c) putting  d) was puttin

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

walking - hoping - shining - saw - see

My friend Ali and I were playing in the forest yesterday. It was a lovely afternoon and the sun was 1) .................... . We were near m home, and we were 2) .................... to see some interesting animals an birds. We were 3) .................... along the path when suddenly we 4) .................... a little house in the distance. "Let's go and look at the house, said Ali. I was a bit scared and didn't want to go, but I followed him.



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



## 4 Read the text then answer the questions.

Tom's grandparents lived by the sea. The beach near their house was quiet and beautiful, and he loved to go there with them. They swam, surfed, and played games on the sand. One day, they were swimming in the sea when Tom saw a glass bottle in the water. "Look, Granddad," he said. "Let's put it in the trash." "I have a better idea," said Granddad. "Let's write a message in a bottle." "What's a message in a bottle?" Tom asked "You write a message on a piece of paper, fold the paper, and put it in the bottle, then throw the bottle out to sea for someone else to find." Granddad replied.

### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Tom's grandparents lived by the ................................ .
   a) **sea** b) **lake** c) **river** d) **farm**
2. The beach near their house was ................................ .
   a) **bad** b) **noisy** c) **quiet** d) **ugly**
3. The underlined word "near" is opposite to ................................ .
   a) **small** b) **far** c) **big** d) **tall**

### B) Answer the following questions.

4. What was Tom doing when he saw a glass bottle in the water?

................................................................................................

5. What was the bottle made of?

................................................................................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. was - I - Yesterday - playing - football - afternoon, - .

................................................................................................

2. Ali - morning - yesterday - What - doing- was - ?

................................................................................................

3. lived - Tom's - sea - by - the - parents - .

................................................................................................

4. was - a newspaper - Dad - Lina - when - came - reading - .

................................................................................................

5. TV - I - when - you - wasn't - me - called - watching - .

................................................................................................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. The weather was .................................................. (rain) yesterday morning
2. The sun ................................................................................................ (were) shining
3. ........................... (Was) you playing computer games yesterday morning?
4. I was reading a book when my mom ................................................... (arrive)
5. Hady was ................ (watch) a football match when Egypt scored a goal
6. Was Hend looking at her phone ........ (what) you saw her in the street?
7. They .................................................. (listen) to music when the man shouted
8. You were studying for the exam when the car .................. (stop) outside
9. They were drawing squares when their friends .. (come) to talk to them
10. I ..................................................... (work) when my friend sent me a message

## 7 Punctuate the following.

- which beach were you on

.......................................................................................................................................................

## 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Finding something on a beach

**Guiding elements:**

- Which beach were you on?
- What time of day was it?
- Who were you with?

.......................................................................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................................................................



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

# Lesson (3) THE BOY WHO CRIED WOLF

## Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية


sheep
أغنام


shepherd
راعي


villager
قروي


wolf
ذئب

## Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| main character | شخصية رئيسية | angry | غضبان | untrue | كاذب / غير صحيح |
| real | حقيقي | lonely | يشعر بالوحدة | idea | فكرة |
| sorry | حزين | bored | شاعر بالملل | fun | متعة - مرح |
| joke | نكتة | | | | |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|
| annoy | يضايق | annoyed | annoyed |
| cry | يصرخ / يبكي / يصيح | cried | cried |
| believe | يصدق | believed | believed |
| shout | يصرخ | shouted | shouted |
| save | ينقذ | saved | saved |
| eat | يأكل | ate | eaten |
| tell | يخبر | told | told |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | |
|---|---|
| at the end | في النهاية |
| on your own | بمفردك |
| many times | عدة مرات |
| waste time | يهدر الوقت - يضيع الوقت |
| angry with | غاضب من |

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Sequencing adverbs ظروف التسلسل

**We use sequencing adverbs to say when things happen. They help us to understand the order of events. This makes the text easier to follow.**

نستخدم ظروف التسلسل لنقول متى تحدث الأشياء. فهي تساعدنا في فهم ترتيب الأحداث. وهذا يجعل النص أسهل للمتابعة.

First أولًا   Next التالي   Then ثم   After that بعد ذلك   Finally أخيرًا/ في النهاية

### The Boy Who Cried Wolf

- Peter was lonely and bored. He wanted some fun. He had an idea.
- First, he shouted "Wolf"! and the villagers came to help and save the sheep.
- Next, he said there was no wolf and it was a joke.
- Then, Peter did it again.
- After that, the villagers were very angry and said he shouldn't waste their time.
- Finally, a real wolf came. It ate the sheep. Peter was very sorry.

- **Notes to help you to write a story using sequencing adverbs.**

- First, plan your story, and decide what it will be about.

أولاً، خطط لقصتك، وقرر ما الذي ستتناوله.

- Next, write a first draft of your story.

بعد ذلك، اكتب المسودة الأولى لقصتك.

- After that, check and correct your spelling and grammar.

بعد ذلك، قم بالتدقيق والتصحيح الإملائي والنحوي.

- Finally, share it with friends and enjoy!

وأخيرا، قم بمشاركتها مع الأصدقاء واستمتع!

### - Choose the correct words to complete the recipe.

**Salatet Zabadee**

1. (First / Then) ................................, take a cucumber and cut it in pieces.
2. (Next / Finally) ................................, mix the yogurt and mint in a bowl.
3. (After that / First) ................................, add some garlic and salt if you like.
4. (Next / Finally) ................................, take it to the table for everyone to enjoy.



Help your child use sequencing adverbs.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم ظروف التسلسل.




## Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

### /w/ sound

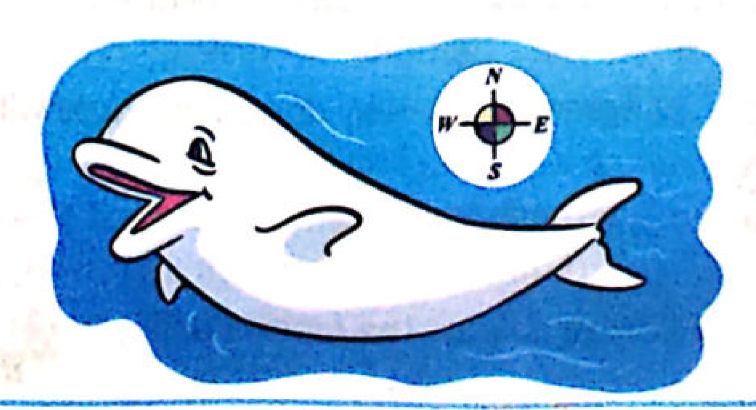
| English | Arabic |
| --- | --- |
| water | ماء |
| walk | يمشى |
| wolf | ذئب |
| west | غرب |
| wave | موجة |
| whisper | يهمس |
| whale | حوت |
| white | أبيض |

**- Complete the words with w or wh. Listen, check and repeat.**

| | | |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 1) __arm | 2) __alk | 3) __at |
| 4) __ave | 5) __ere | 6) __est |

**- Listen, read, and repeat the sentences:**

1. A white whale went west.
2. A wolf whispered, "What? When?"




Help your child learn how to say words with the sound /w/. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف ينطق كلمات بها الصوت /w/.




**It is a stressed part of a word. It is said more strongly than the rest of it.** مقطع المشدد هو جزء من كلمة يتم نطقه بشكل أقوى من باقي الكلمة.

- When a word has a **prefix**, the prefix usually **isn't** stressed.

ندما تحتوي الكلمة على بادئة، عادةً لا يتم التشديد على البادئة.

- If the base word has one syllable, the stress is on the **base** word.

ا كانت الكلمة الأساسية تتكون من مقطع واحد يتم التشديد على أصل الكلمة.



dis**like** → Why do you dislike surfing?



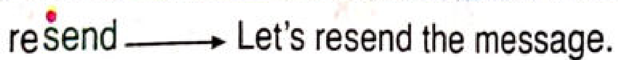


in**doors** → I like playing indoors.



un**happy** → He was unhappy.





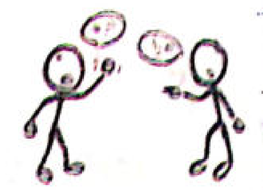
re**send** → Let's resend the message.



re**play** → Please replay the video.

1 + 1 = 3

in**correct** → This answer is incorrect.



dis**agree** → Why do you disagree with him?



un**tidy** → The room is untidy.



Help your child learn about the stressed syllable.
لد طفلك أن يتعلم المقطع المشدد.

# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. There was once a boy who looked after some ........................................ .
   a) cows b) sheep c) goats d) donkeys
2. The boy was ........................................ .
   a) bored b) excited c) happy d) clever
3. One day, he played a trick on the ........................................ .
   a) students b) tourists c) visitors d) villagers
4. The villagers came up the hill to ........................................ the sheep.
   a) eat b) look after c) save d) carry

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main ............................ in the story was a bit boring. I didn't like him.
   a) moral b) character c) setting d) ending
2. My little brother always ........................................ me when he is bored.
   a) annoys b) reads c) eats d) drinks
3. If you tell untrue stories, no one will ........................................ you.
   a) hate b) eat c) believe d) work
4. ........................................, a real wolf came. It ate the sheep.
   a) First b) Next c) Then d) Finally
5. If you tell ........................................ stories no one will believe you.
   a) true b) right c) untrue d) exact

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**Next - villagers - shouted - fun - wolf**

Peter was lonely and bored. He wanted some 1) .................... He had an idea. First, he 2) ............................ "Wolf"! and the villagers came to help and save the sheep. 3) ............................, he said there was no wolf and it was a joke. Then, Peter did it again. After that, the 4) ................ were very angry and said he shouldn't waste their time. Finally, a real wolf came. It ate the sheep. Peter was very sorry.

## 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. main - Why - the villagers - the - character - annoy - did - ?

   ..............................................................................................

2. and - bored - Peter - lonely- was - .

   ..............................................................................................

3. wolf - the - What - eat - at - did - the end - ?

   ..............................................................................................

4. do - Why - disagree - him - with - you - ?

   ..............................................................................................

5. like - indoors - I - playing - sister - my - with - .

   ..............................................................................................

6. is - the main - the - character - Who - in - story - ?

   ..............................................................................................

## 5 Punctuate the following.

- it's better to work on your own

  ..............................................................................................

## 6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

**How to make salatet zabadee**

Guiding elements:

(First - cucumber - mix - yogurt)

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................



Help your child deal with such questions.

ث أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

# Lessons (4 & 5)

## WRITING: THE ENDING OF A STORY
## PROJECT

## Vocabulary الكلمات

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| reply | يرد / رد | coast | ساحل | boat | قارب |
| weekend | عطلة نهاية الأسبوع | sailing | الإبحار | excited | متحمس |
| France | فرنسا | favorite | مفضل | later | فيما بعد |
| woman | إمرأة | things | أشياء | plane | طائرة |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|
| travel | يسافر | traveled | traveled |
| enjoy | يستمتع بـ | enjoyed | enjoyed |
| pass | يمر | passed | passed |
| visit | يزور | visited | visited |
| laugh | يضحك | laughed | laughed |
| decide to | يقرر أن | decided to | decided to |

### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|
| send | يرسل | sent | sent |
| find | يجد | found | found |
| mean | يعني | meant | meant |
| grow up | يكبر | grew up | grown up |
| come | يأتي | came | come |
| feel | يشعر | felt | felt |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| read about | يقرأ عن | come into | يدخل |
| travel over | يسافر لأكثر من | That's a great idea! | هذه فكرة رائعة! |
| welcome to | مرحبًا بك في | a long way | طريق طويل |

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## - Read this ending of the story:

Many years passed and Tom grew up. He and his grandparents forgo about the message in a bottle. Then, one day, Tom was working when Granddad sent him a message.

نوات عديدة وكبر توم. لقد نسي هو وأجداده الرسالة الموجودة في الزجاجة. وفي أحد الأيام، كان توم يعمل عندما أرسل له جده رسالة.

Tom, you won't believe it! We have a reply to our message in a bottle!

وم، لن تصدق ذلك! لدينا رد على رسالتنا في زجاجة!

That weekend, Tom went to his grandparents' house.

"A man in France found the message," said Granddad. "Look, here is h reply."

ية هذا الأسبوع، ذهب توم إلى منزل أجداده.

دي: "عثر رجل في فرنسا على الرسالة". "انظر، ها هو رده."



From : Hugo

To : Tom

---

Hello Tom,

My name is Hugo and I live in Biarritz, France. I live on the coast and love sailing my boat. Last week, I was sailing when I saw something i the water – your message in a bottle! This means it traveled over 6,00 kilometers.

I enjoyed reading about your favorite things. My favorite things are m boat, mangoes, and the color green.

You are very welcome to come and visit me in France one day!

With best wishes,

Hugo

جبا توم،

ي هوجو وأعيش في بياريتز، فرنسا. أعيش على الساحل وأحب الإبحار بقاربي. في الأسبوع الماضي، كنت أبحر عندما رأيت شيئًا في الماء - رسالتك في زجاجة! وهذا يعني أنها سافرت أكثر من ٦٠٠٠ كيلومتر. لقد استمتعت بالقراءة عن الأشياء المفضلة لديك. ئي المفضلة هي القارب والمانجو واللون الأخضر. أنت مرحب بك جدًا لزيارتي في فرنسا يومًا ما!

أطيب التمنيات،

هوجو



Help your child write the ending of short story

طفلك أن يكتب نهاية قصة قصيرة.

Tom was very excited. "Wow, our message traveled a really long way!"
Later that evening, Tom was writing something when Granddad came into the room.
"What are you doing, Tom?"
"I'm writing to Hugo."
"Why, are you going to visit him?"
"You and I are both going to visit him!"
"That's a great idea," laughed Granddad. "But it's a long way, so let's go by plane!"

كان توم متحمسًا جدًا. "رائع، لقد قطعت رسالتنا طريقًا طويلًا جدًا!"
في وقت لاحق من ذلك المساء، كان توم يكتب شيئًا ما عندما دخل جده الغرفة.
"ماذا تفعل يا توم؟"
"أنا أكتب إلى هوجو."
"لماذا، هل ستزوره؟"
"أنا وأنت سنزوره!"
ضحك الجد: "إنها فكرة رائعة". "ولكن الطريق طويل، لذلك دعنا نذهب بالطائرة!"

## A good ending



A good ending tells you what happens to the characters and how they feel at the end of the story.

تخبرك النهاية الجيدة بما يحدث للشخصيات وما يشعرون به في نهاية القصة.

**- Write another ending to the story.**

From : ..............................
To : Tom

Hello Tom,
My name is .............................. and I live in ..............................
Last week, I was .............................. when ..............................
I enjoyed reading about your favorite things. My favorite things are
..............................................................

Tom felt .............................................. Then he and Granddad decided to
..............................

# General Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Hugo lives in Biarritz, ............................................
   a) France  b) Egypt  c) China  d) USA
2. Hugo loves ............................................ his boat
   a) driving  b) riding  c) carrying  d) sailing
3. Hugo saw something in the ............................................
   a) sky  b) land  c) water  d) ground
4. The message in a bottle traveled over ............................ kilometers
   a) 6  b) 6,000  c) 600  d) 60

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Many years ............................................ and Tom grew up.
   a) passed  b) traveled  c) worked  d) visited
2. Grandpa ............................................ me a message.
   a) ran  b) played  c) took  d) sent
3. Hugo sent a ............................................ to our message.
   a) talk  b) reply  c) boat  d) great
4. I enjoyed reading ............................................ interesting things.
   a) in  b) on  c) about  d) at
5. Our message traveled a really long ............................................
   a) way  b) away  c) plane  d) why

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

working - grandparents - France - believe - popular

Many years passed and Tom grew up. He and his 1) ........................ forgot about the message in a bottle. Then, one day, Tom was 2) ................ when Granddad sent him a message. Tom, you won't 3) ........................ it! We have a reply to our message in a bottle! That weekend, Tom went to his grandparents' house. "A man in 4) .................... found the message," said Granddad. "Look, here is his reply."

 Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Hugo - doing - What - when - he - the message - found - was - ?

..................................................................................................

2. was - yesterday - writing - Tom - a message - morning - .

..................................................................................................

3. to - I - to France - by - travel - decided - plane - .

..................................................................................................

4. you - Why - him - are - going - visit - to - ?

..................................................................................................

5. welcome - You - me - are - and - to come - visit - .

..................................................................................................

## 5 Punctuate the following.

- my name's Ali and I live in egypt.

..................................................................................................

## 6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

**A short story**

**Guiding elements:**

(characters - setting - main events - ending)

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

# Writing Corner

### A beginning of a story

My friend Ali and I were playing in the forest yesterday. It was a love afternoon and the sun was shining. We were near my home, and we wer hoping to see some interesting animals and birds. We were walking alon the path when suddenly we saw a little house in the distance. "Let's go an look at the house," said Ali. I was a bit scared and didn't want to go, but I followed him. Near the house, there was … .

### The boy who cried "wolf"

Peter was lonely and bored. He wanted some fun. He had an ide First, he shouted "Wolf"! and the villagers came to help and save the shee Next, he said there was no wolf and it was a joke. Then, Peter did it agai After that, the villagers were very angry and said he shouldn't waste the time. Finally, a real wolf came. It ate the sheep. Peter was very sorry.

### A reply to a message



From : Hugo
To : Tom

---

Hello Tom,

My name is Hugo and I live in Biarritz, France. I live on the coast and I love sailing my boat. Last week, I was sailing when I saw something in the water – your message in a bottle! This means it traveled over 6,000 kilometers. I enjoyed reading about your favorite things. My favorite things are my boat, mangoes, and the color green. You are very welcome to come and visit me in France one day!

With best wishes,

Hugo

# Review on Unit (9)

## Vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| setting | المكان والزمان | message | رسالة | reply | يرد / رد |
| moral | مغزى - الدرس المستفاد | surf | يركب الأمواج | story | قصة |
| narrator | راوي | grandparents | الأجداد | bottle | زجاجة |
| ending | خاتمة - نهاية | sheep | أغنام | weekend | عطلة نهاية الأسبوع |
| beginning | بداية | shepherd | راعي | villager | قروي |
| characters | الشخصيات | coast | ساحل | boat | قارب |
| events | أحداث | sailing | الإبحار | excited | متحمس |
| review | مقال نقدي | favorite | مفضل | later | فيما بعد |
| man | رجل | things | أشياء | plane | طائرة |
| journey | رحلة | work | يعمل | travel | يسافر |

## Pronunciation

| /w/ sound | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| water | ماء | walk | يمشي |
| wolf | ذئب | whisper | يهمس |
| wave | موجة | white | أبيض |
| west | غرب | whale | حوت |

## Language

### The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضي المستمر

- نستخدم الماضي المستمر ليدل على شئ كان يحدث في وقت معين في الماضي.

**eg.** Yesterday afternoon, John was walking his dog.

- يمكننا أيضًا استخدام الماضي المستمر لبيان أن حدثًا ما قطع حدثًا آخر.

ماضي بسيط + when + ماضي مستمر

**eg.** I was reading a book when my dad came home.

### Sequencing adverbs ظروف التسلسل

First أولًا Next التالي Then ثم After that بعد ذلك Finally أخيرًا

# Dictation on Uni

## Lesso

| | |
|---|---|
| المكان والزمان | ........................................ |
| الشخصيات | ........................................ |
| خاتمة - نهاية | ........................................ |
| يعمل | ........................................ |

## Lesso

| | |
|---|---|
| رسالة | ........................................ |
| الأجداد | ........................................ |
| زجاجة | ........................................ |
| يعيش | ........................................ |

## Lesso

| | |
|---|---|
| أغنام | ........................................ |
| قروي | ........................................ |
| شخصية رئيسية | ........................................ |
| يضايق | ........................................ |

## Lesson

| | |
|---|---|
| رد | ........................................ |
| قارب | ........................................ |
| الإبحار | ........................................ |
| مفضل | ........................................ |
| رجل | ........................................ |
| يستمتع | ........................................ |

# Activities on Unit (9)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Yesterday, I was on the ..............................
   a) beach  b) road  c) ship  d) garden
2. It was ..............................
   a) windy  b) sunny  c) rainy  d) cloudy
3. I was walking with my ..............................
   a) brother  b) sister  c) mother  d) friend
4. We saw a big ..............................
   a) shark  b) jellyfish  c) whale  d) starfish

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The .............................. of the story is that kindness is everything.
   a) moral  b) character  c) ending  d) narrator
2. The .............................. is the person who tells you the story.
   a) character  b) setting  c) narrator  d) moral
3. In the .............................., we find out why the man was sad.
   a) narrator  b) ending  c) setting  d) character
4. The .............................. is London, in 1965.
   a) character  b) narrator  c) ending  d) setting

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**message - surfed - beach - sea - games**

Tom's grandparents lived by the sea. The 1).................... near their house was quiet and beautiful, and he loved to go there with them. They swam, 2).................... and played games on the sand. One day they were swimming in the 3).................... when Tom saw a glass bottle in the water. His Granddad said, "Let's write a 4).................... in a bottle."

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Ali. I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories. The one abo a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The setting is t countryside, many years ago. Two of the characters – the man and his s – take turns riding the donkey because it's a long journey. When the b rides the donkey, the people they pass say he should let his father ri When the man rides the donkey, they say that he should let his son ha a turn. Then, they say the donkey must be tired. So, in the ending of t story, they both carry the donkey!

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Ali is writing a .................................................. of one of Goha's stori
   a) **note** b) **review** c) **comment** d) **post**
2. The setting of this story is the ..................................................
   a) **market** b) **zoo** c) **countryside** d) **park**
3. In the .................................................. of the story, they carry the donk
   a) **beginning** b) **middle** c) **ending** d) **starting**

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. Who are the characters of this story? ..................................................
5. What's the moral of the story? ..................................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. and - a cucumber - First, - cut - take - in - it - pieces - .
..................................................
2. you - Why - do - surfing - dislike - ?
..................................................
3. riding - his - Ayman - was - bike - morning - yesterday - .
..................................................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between bracket

1. He .................................................. (play) the piano when his mom arrived hom
2. We were travelling to the city when Grandpa .................................................. (call) u

## 7 Punctuate the following.

- a white whale went west ..................................................

## 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about "A short story":

**Guiding elements:**

**- The characters** **- Main events** **- The setting** **- The ending**



Help your child deal with such questions.

ـد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

# Al-Azhar Corner

## 1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

differences - narrator - funny - review - popular

Mom : What are you doing, Lama?
Lama : I'm writing a 1) .................... of one of Goha's stories.
Mom : His stories are 2) ...................., aren't they?
Lama : Yes, he is a great 3) ...................., too.
Mom : His stories are 4) .................... all over the world.
Lama : Are the stories the same in every country?
Mom : There are some 5) ....................

## Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

sunny - were - beach - weather - playing

Hoda : Where were you?
Shahd : I was on the 1) ....................
Hoda : What 2) .................... you doing?
Shahd : I was 3) .................... with my friends.
Hoda : What was the 4) .................... like?
Shahd : It was 5) ....................

## 2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Morocco | Cairo | Algeria | Sudan | (..........) |
| 2. | writing | playing | riding | travel | (..........) |
| 3. | read | grandma | grandpa | father | (..........) |
| 4. | called | played | watch | arrived | (..........) |
| 5. | Which | What | Where | Was | (..........) |

## Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | first | next | then | cried | (..........) |
| 2. | donkey | man | son | woman | (..........) |
| 3. | wolf | sheep | cow | annoy | (..........) |
| 4. | angry | worked | bored | tired | (..........) |
| 5. | listening | studying | shouted | playing | (..........) |

في نهاية الكتاب

# Activities on Review (3)

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Playing is ............................................ for us in lots of differer
   a) bad b) good c) harmful d) sad
2. When we play we feel ............................................
   a) happy b) sad c) bad d) angry
3. We also ............................................ about the world and our
   a) write b) read c) learn d) teach
4. When we play, we learn to solve ............................................
   a) homework b) stories c) puzzles d) proble

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A hot, dry climate can help to ............................................ old ar
   a) damage b) preserve c) beat d) learn
2. Who is your favorite ............................................ in this
   a) character b) setting c) ending d) event
3. I like playing video games with my brother, but he usually ..............
   a) beats b) drinks c) built d) boats
4. This story has a very exciting .............................. . It's in fores a big castle in the middle.
   a) setting b) character c) ending d) narrato

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**very - when - were - playing - First**

One day, Fares and Ramy were 1).............................. hopscot the school yard. They 2).............................. drawing squares using diffe colored chalk 3).............................. their friend Magdy came to talk to th "What are you playing?" asked Magdy. "It's hopscotch!" said Fares. "D you want to play?" "How do you play it?" asked Magdy. "It's 4).............. easy," said Ramy.



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد ابنك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Last summer, we went to a museum in the city. There were so many nteresting artifacts to see. My brother and I were walking around when we ound a room that had lots of animal statues. The Ancient Egyptians made ots of animal statues, because animals were very important in their culture. First, we saw different statues in gold and silver. Then we saw some in clay, stone, and granite, too. My favorite was a small snake made of metal. My brother liked a gold falcon with blue glass eyes. There were ots of cats made of brightly colored stone, too. The Ancient Egyptians adored cats. They believed that cats kept them safe.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. We went to a museum in the city last ..........................
   a) summer  b) winter  c) fall  d) spring
2. My brother liked a gold .......................... with blue glass eyes.
   a) parrot  b) eagle  c) falcon  d) snake
3. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ..........................
   a) statues  b) cats  c) Ancient Egyptians  d) animals

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. What did they see? ..........................
5. Where did they go? ..........................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. toy - buys - Nadia - a cuddly - for - sister - her - .
   ..........................
2. are - Artifacts - and - both - jewelry - objects - .
   ..........................
3. when - you - What - doing - were - saw - you - snake - the - ?
   ..........................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. We .......................... (walk) when we found a room.
2. I stopped .......................... (play) board games.

## 7 Punctuate the following.

- the park is in the middle of a city ..........................

## 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about "Our museum visit":

**Guiding elements:**

- Where did you go?  - When did you go?  - What did you see?

# Unit 10

# Free as a bird

**In this unit, the students will ...**

- listen, read, research, and write about bird and animal proverbs.
- listen to and understand a presentation about eco-tourism in Egypt.
- read and learn about eco-tourism and wildlife.
- use must / mustn't to talk about something we have to do.
- use the first conditional to talk about things that are likely to happen in the future.
- read advertisements for eco-tourism vacations in Egypt.
- read and learn about bird migration.
- say words with two or three syllables.
- read and write a blog about animal habitats.
- create an information leaflet about the Nile Delta.

# Lesson (1) BIRDS OF A FEATHER



## Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| successful | ناجح | real | حقيقي |
| similar | متشابه | sensible | عاقل / حكيم |
| careful | حريص | proverb | قول مأثور |

## Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| flock | يتجمع / سرب | group | مجموعة |
| strange | غريب | chickens | دجاج |
| nest | عش | plan | خطة |
| scary | مخيف | true | حقيقي |
| eagle | نسر | worm | دودة |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|
| succeed | ينجح | succeeded | succeeded |
| flock | يتجمع | flocked | flocked |
| stay | يقيم / يمكث | stayed | stayed |
| mention | يذكر | mentioned | mentioned |
| count | يعد | counted | counted |
| hatch | يفقس | hatched | hatched |
| happen | يحدث | happened | happened |
| dare | يجرؤ | dared | dared |

### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|
| mean | يعني / يقصد | meant | meant |
| tell | يخبر | told | told |
| catch | يصطاد / يمسك | caught | caught |
| say | يقول | said | said |
| fly | يطير | flew | flown |
| sing | يغني | sang | sung |
| understand | يفهم | understood | understood |

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Important expressions and prepositions

عبارات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| well-known | مشهور / معروف | How about...? | ماذا عن...؟ |
| well done! | أحسنت! | You're getting the idea. | بدأت تفهم الفكرة. |
| try hard | يحاول بجد | make mistakes | يرتكب أخطاء |



## Definitions

تعريفات

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **sensible** | If something is **sensible**, it is a good idea that someone has thought about carefully. | عاقل / حكيم |
| **successful** | Someone who is **successful** tries to do something, and does it. | ناجح |
| **careful** | A **careful** person tries hard not to make mistakes. | حريص |
| **similar** | When two things are **similar**, they might look the same or do the same things. | متشابه |
| **real** | If something is **real**, it happens and is true. | حقيقي |

## Proverbs أقوال مأثورة

- A proverb is a well-known phrase about something which is generally true.

القول المأثور هو عبارة مشهورة حول شيء يكون صحيحا بشكل عام.

- A proverb has another meaning as well as its exact meaning.

القول المأثور له معنى آخر علاوة على معناه الفعلي.

### Study the following proverbs

1. "The early bird catches the worm".

الطائر الذي يبحث عن طعامه مبكرًا يحصل عليه. "البركة في البكور."

2. "Birds of a feather flock together".

الطيور ذات الريش المتشابه تتجمع سويًا. "الطيور على أشكالها تقع."

3. "Don't count your chickens before they hatch".

لا تحكم على شئ بأنه جيد قبل حدوثه. "لا تعد فراخك قبل أن تفقس من البيض."

4. "The bird who dares to fall is the bird who learns to fly".

الطائر الذي يجرؤ على مواجهة الأخطار هو من يتعلم الطيران. "من جَدّ وَجَدَ ومن زرع حصد."

5. "Even an eagle will not fly higher than the sun".

حتى النسر لا يمكنه الطيران أعلى من الشمس. "العين لا تعلو على الحاجب."

6. "Singing birds don't build nests".

الطيور المغردة لا تبني أعشاشًا. "الأعمال أعلى صوتًا من الأقوال."

7. "It is not only fine feathers which make fine birds".

ليس الريش الناعم فقط هو من يصنع الطيور الجيدة. "المظاهر خداعة / لا تحكم على الناس بالمظاهر."



Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

**Malak** : Injy, what does this proverb mean? "The early bird catches the worm."

إنجي، ماذا يعني هذا المثل؟ "الطائر الذي جاء مبكرا يلتقط الدودة."

**Injy** : Well, proverbs have more than one meaning. This proverb tells us that a bird that is early, or the first to try to catch a worm, usually catches it. So, it also means that to be **successful**, you need to be the first to do something.

حسنًا، الأمثال لها أكثر من معنى. يخبرنا هذا المثل أن الطائر الذي يكون مبكرًا، أو أول من يحاول اصطياد الدودة، عادة ما يصطادها. لذلك، فهذا يعني أيضًا أن تكون ناجحًا يجب أن تكون الأول في فعل هذا الشيء.

**Malak** : How about this one? "Birds of a feather flock together".

وماذا عن هذا المثل؟ "الطيور ذات الريش المتشابه تتجمع سويًا".

**Injy** : If they flock together, that means they stay in a large group. And maybe it mentions feathers because they all have similar feathers.

إذا تجمعوا معًا، فهذا يعني أنهم يبقون في مجموعة كبيرة. وربما يذكر الريش لأن جميعها لها ريش متشابه.

**Malak** : You mean they all look the same?

هل تقصد أنهم جميعا يبدون نفس الشيء؟

**Injy** : Yes. But here, it means that similar people like doing the same things.

نعم. ولكن هنا يعني أن الأشخاص المتشابهين يحبون القيام بنفس الأشياء.

**Malak** : Okay, here's a strange one! "Don't count your chickens before they hatch."

حسنا، هذا مثل غريب! "لا تعدوا فراخكم قبل أن تفقس من البيض."

**Injy** : Well, you might have four eggs in a nest, but you don't really know how many will become chickens. So maybe it's about being **careful** before you know something will happen.

حسنًا، قد يكون لديك أربع بيضات في العش، لكنك لا تعرف حقًا عدد الفراخ التي ستصبح دجاجًا. لذلك ربما يتعلق الأمر بالحذر قبل أن تعرف أن شيئًا ما سيحدث.

**Malak** : So you don't make too many plans before something is **real**. That's **sensible**. How about this proverb? "The bird who dares to fall is the bird who learns to fly." Do you think that means you have to try something that seems scary if you want to succeed?

لذلك لا تضع الكثير من الخطط قبل أن يصبح الأمر حقيقيًا. هذا معقول. ماذا عن هذا المثل؟ "الطائر الذي يجرؤ على السقوط هو الطائر الذي يتعلم الطيران." هل تعتقد أن هذا يعني أنه عليك تجربة شيء يبدو مخيفًا إذا كنت تريد النجاح؟

**Injy** : Yes, I do. Well done, Malak! You're getting the idea!

نعم. أحسنتِ يا مَلَك! لقد فهمتِ الفكرة!

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

# General Activities

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The early ........................................ catches the wo
   a) bird b) animal c) bee d) falcon
2. Proverbs have more than ........................................ meaning
   a) four b) three c) two d) one
3. The proverb also means that to be ........................................
   a) noisy b) lazy c) successful d) careless
4. To be successful, you need to be the ........................ to do somethi
   a) first b) second c) third d) fourth

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Birds of a feather ........................................ togeth
   a) run b) flock c) talk d) swim
2. Don't count your chickens before they ........................................
   a) eat b) drink c) watch d) hatch
3. The early bird ........................................ the wo
   a) sells b) buys c) makes d) catches
4. Even an eagle will not fly higher than the ........................................
   a) sun b) tree c) flower d) plant
5. Singing birds don't build ........................................
   a) castles b) nests c) houses d) clubs
6. If something is ........................, it is a good idea that someone h thought about carefully.
   a) sensible b) bad c) dangerous d) busy



Help your child deal with such questions.

طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

7. Someone who is .................................. tries to do something, and does it.
   a) **excited** b) **dangerous** c) **real** d) **successful**

8. A ................................................ person tries hard not to make mistakes.
   a) **careless** b) **careful** c) **sad** d) **well-known**

9. When two things are ............ , they might look the same or do the same things.
   a) **different** b) **fast** c) **similar** d) **slow**

10. If something is .................................................. , it happens and is true.
   a) **real** b) **unreal** c) **false** d) **wrong**

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**look - different - feathers - group - similar**

"Birds of feather flock together". That means they stay in a large 1) ........................ And maybe it mentions 2) ................................ because they all have 3) ........................... feathers. So they all 4) ............................ the same.

## 4 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. might - eggs - You - four - have - nest - a - in - .

..........................................................................................................................

2. have - one - Proverbs - than - meaning - more - .

..........................................................................................................................

3. together - Birds - a feather - of - flock - .

..........................................................................................................................

4. bird - early - The - catches - worm - the - .

..........................................................................................................................

## 5 Punctuate the following.

- how about this one

..........................................................................................................................

# Lesson (2) ECO-TOURISM IN EGYPT

## Vocabulary
كلمات أساسية

| eco-tourism | السياحة البيئية | sustainable | مستدام (ملائم للبيئة) |
|---|---|---|---|
| ideal | مثالي | respect | يحترم |
| simple accommodation | وسائل إقامة بسيطة | camp | يقيم معسكر / يخيم - يعسكر |
| coral reefs | الشعاب المرجانية | protected area | منطقة محمية |

## Activities
أنشطة

| hiking | التنزه سيرًا على الأقدام | snorkeling | الغطس بأنبوب تنفس |
|---|---|---|---|
| watching movies | مشاهدة الأفلام | taking photos | التقاط الصور |
| going to restaurants | الذهاب إلى المطاعم | watching animals | مشاهدة الحيوانات |
| visiting beaches | زيارة الشواطئ | cooking outdoors | الطهي بالخارج |
| traveling on a river | التنقل عبر النهر | taking photos underwater | التقاط الصور تحت الماء |
| bird watching | مشاهدة الطيور | watching wildlife | مشاهدة الحياة البرية |

## Places
أماكن

| North Africa | شمال أفريقيا | Asia | آسيا |
|---|---|---|---|
| Siwa Oasis | واحة سيوة | Europe | أوروبا |

## Extra vocabulary
كلمات إضافية

| amazing | مذهل | journey | رحلة | lizards | سحالي |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| historical | تاريخي | species | فصائل / أنواع | turtles | سلاحف بحرية |
| stores | محلات | habitat | موطن / بيئة | crocodiles | تماسيح |
| guidebook | دليل سياحي | perfect | مثالي | tent | خيمة |
| mountains | جبال | excellent | ممتاز | tour | جولة |
| traditional | تقليدي | modern | حديث | trip | رحلة قصيرة |
| nature | الطبيعة | environment | البيئة | quiet | هادئ |
| pollution | تلوث | trash | قمامة | vacation | إجازة |



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Lesson (2)

### Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|
| protect | يحمي | protected | protected |
| cause | يسبب | caused | caused |
| sail | يبحر | sailed | sailed |
| fly | يطير | flew | flown |
| hurt | يؤذى | hurt | hurt |

### Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| warmer weather | طقس أكثر دفئًا | close to | قريب من |
| very long distance | مسافة طويلة جدًا | fly away | يطير بعيدًا |
| migrating water birds | هجرة الطيور المائية | at certain times | في أوقات محددة |
| from a safe distance | من مسافة آمنة | the sun went down | غربت الشمس |
| set off | ينطلق / يبدأ رحلة | under the stars | تحت النجوم (في الهواء الطلق) |
| bright-colored fish | أسماك ذات ألوان زاهية | a busy day | يوم حافل |
| underwater photography | | | التصوير الفوتوغرافي تحت الماء |

### Definitions تعريفات

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **sustainable** | do something in a way that doesn't damage the environment. | مستدام / ملائم للبيئة |
| **accommodation** | living in a place where you have what you need, and nothing more. | سكن / أماكن أقامة |
| **respect** | like something and want to look after it. | يحترم |
| **ideal** | perfect or excellent | مثالي |

**Note:** A guidebook gives tourists information about a place.
الدليل السياحي يعطى السياح معلومات عن مكان.



### Activities and places أنشطة وأماكن

| Activities | | Places | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Snorkeling | الغطس بأنبوب تنفس وقناع | the Red Sea | البحر الأحمر |
| Safari | رحلات السفاري | the desert | الصحراء |
| Sailing | الإبحار | the Nile | النيل |
| Bird-watching | مشاهدة الطيور | Siwa Oasis | واحة سيوة |

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



Egypt is an amazing country. There are many historical places to visit, as well as stores, markets, and museums. People can go snorkeling in the Red Sea, go on a desert safari, climb mountains, or sail on the Nile. So, tourism is important – but eco-tourism is becoming very popular, too.

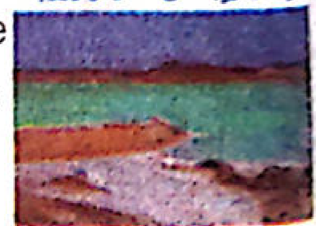
…ر بلد رائعة. هناك العديد من الأماكن التاريخية للزيارة، وكذلك المتاجر والأسواق والمتاحف. يمكن للناس أن يذهبوا للغطس في …حر الأحمر، أو الذهاب في رحلة سفاري صحراوية، أو تسلق الجبال، أو الإبحار في النيل. لذا، فإن السياحة مهمة - لكن السياحة البيئية …بحت تحظى بشعبية كبيرة أيضًا.

Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment. It's mo… **sustainable** than traditional tourism, and it is designed to protect nature. Peop… stay in **simple accommodation**, not large hotels, and they mustn't travel in wa… that cause lots of pollution.

…ياحة البيئية هي وسيلة سفر لا تضر بالبيئة. إنها أكثر استدامة وملائمة من السياحة التقليدية، وهي مصممة لحماية الطبيعة. يقيم …س في أماكن إقامة بسيطة، وليس في فنادق كبيرة، ويجب ألا يسافروا بطرق تسبب الكثير من التلوث.

Many people are starting to visit Egypt for wildlife and bird-watching. There a… lots of interesting birds to see here. Many kinds of birds migrate – they must fly t… different countries at certain times of year, to find food, make nests, or have warme… weather. The birds often must fly very long distances, and lots of their journeys g… over Egypt, because it is in North Africa and close to Asia and Europe.

…أ الكثير من الناس بزيارة مصر لمشاهدة الحياة البرية والطيور. هناك الكثير من الطيور المثيرة للاهتمام التي يمكنك رؤيتها هنا. أنواع …ثيرة من الطيور تهاجر - يجب عليهم التنقل إلى بلدان مختلفة في أوقات معينة من السنة، للعثور على الطعام، أو بناء أعشاش، أو التمتع …طقس أكثر دفئًا. وفي كثير من الأحيان يجب أن تطير الطيور لمسافات طويلة جدًا، وكثير من رحلاتها تمر فوق مصر، لأنها تقع في شمال …فريقيا وقريبة من آسيا وأوروبا.



There are over 450 species of birds in Egypt, and people come from all over the world on vacations to see them. For example, Siwa Oasis is a fantastic place to see many migrating water birds. It is an important habitat and people must protect it.

…وجد في مصر أكثر من ٤٥٠ نوعاً من الطيور، ويأتي الناس من جميع أنحاء العالم في إجازات لرؤيتها. على سبيل المثال، واحة سيوة مكان …ائع لرؤية العديد من الطيور المائية المهاجرة. إنه موطن مهم ويجب على الناس حمايته.

People who go bird watching in Egypt will have a lot to see. They mustn't get too close to the birds, because they might fly away, but they can watch from a safe distance and take lots of photographs!

…شخاص الذين يذهبون لمشاهدة الطيور في مصر سيكون لديهم الكثير لرؤيته. ويجب ألا أن يقتربوا كثيرًا من الطيور، لأنهم قد يطيرون …عيدًا، لكن يمكنهم المشاهدة من مسافة آمنة والتقاط الكثير من الصور!

Wildlife watching is **ideal** for people who **respect** nature, and eco-tourism is a good way for people to do this.

…تبر مشاهدة الحياة البرية مثالية للأشخاص الذين يحترمون الطبيعة، وتعد السياحة البيئية وسيلة جيدة للأشخاص للقيام بذلك.

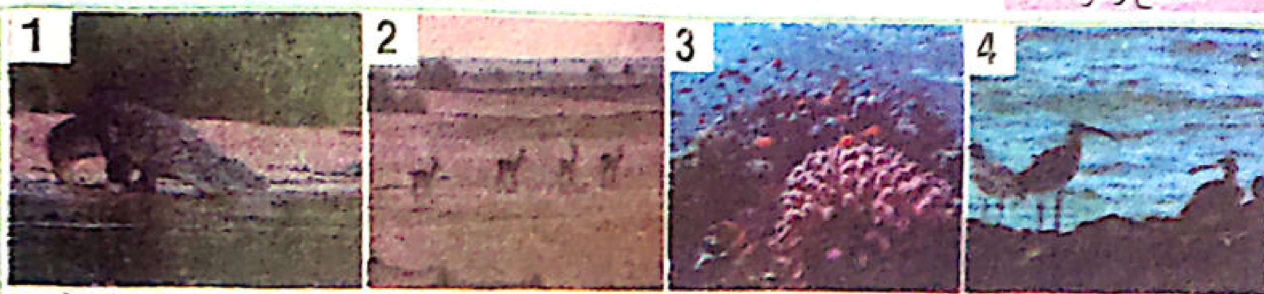


Help your child listen and read.

…ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.




**1- On the river:** Hi, I'm Nadia. Next month, we're going on a tour to see the birds and animals which live near the water. We'll travel along the river in small boats, and camp in tents at night. We'll bring our cameras, because we'll see some amazing things. We hope to see lizards and turtles, as well as lots of interesting plants. However, we mustn't swim because there might be crocodiles!

مرحبًا، أنا نادية. في الشهر القادم، سنقوم بجولة لرؤية الطيور والحيوانات التي تعيش بالقرب من الماء. سنسافر بطول النهر في قوارب صغيرة، والتخييم في الخيام ليلاً. سنحضر كاميراتنا، لأننا سنرى بعض الأشياء المذهلة. نأمل أن نرى السحالي والسلاحف، بالإضافة إلى الكثير من النباتات المثيرة للاهتمام. ومع ذلك، يجب ألا نسبح لأنه قد يكون هناك تماسيح!

**2- Desert sunsets:** Hi, I'm Adam. I love visiting this place with my family. We went last year, and in the evenings, we saw lots of wildlife when the sun went down - more animals live on the sand than you might think. This year we'll stay outside and cook meals under the stars, so we must bring a tent. Then we'll walk in small groups to see the wildlife around us.

مرحبًا، أنا آدم. أحب زيارة هذا المكان مع عائلتي. لقد ذهبنا العام الماضي، وفي المساء، شاهدنا الكثير من الحياة البرية عندما غربت الشمس - يعيش عدد أكبر من الحيوانات على الرمال أكثر مما قد تعتقد. هذا العام سنبقى في الخارج ونطبخ وجبات الطعام تحت النجوم (في الهواء الطلق)، لذلك يجب علينا إحضار خيمة. ثم سنسير في مجموعات صغيرة لرؤية الحياة البرية من حولنا.

**3- Snorkel safari:** Hi, I'm Lara. We're going to have the chance to do some underwater photography on our vacation! We'll set off on a tour from the beach in small boats, and sail out to places where we can see many different kinds of fish. There are beautiful, bright-colored fish there, as well as coral reefs. The tour is only on Monday and Wednesday because this is a protected area, so there mustn't be too many trips.

مرحبًا، أنا لارا. سيكون لدينا فرصة للقيام ببعض التصوير تحت الماء في إجازتنا! سننطلق في جولة من الشاطئ بالقوارب الصغيرة، والإبحار إلى الأماكن حيث يمكننا رؤية العديد من أنواع الأسماك المختلفة. هناك أيضًا أسماك جميلة ذات ألوان زاهية وكذلك الشعاب المرجانية. الجولة فقط يومي الاثنين والأربعاء لأن هذه منطقة محمية، لذا يجب ألا أن يكون هناك الكثير من الرحلات.

**4- Birds at sea:** Hi, I'm Fares. Next week, we're going on a tour to see some beautiful birds. We'll visit quiet beaches on a small bus, to see how many different kinds we can see. The sea in this area is a very popular place for birds to find food, so it will be a busy day. We're definitely going to bring our cameras! We must bring our own lunches too, as there are no shops there.

مرحبًا، أنا فارس. في الأسبوع القادم، سنذهب في جولة لنرى بعض الطيور الجميلة. سنقوم بزيارة الشواطئ الهادئة في حافلة صغيرة، لنرى الأنواع المختلفة التي يمكننا رؤيتها. يعد البحر في هذه المنطقة مكانًا محبوبًا جدًا للطيور للعثور على الطعام، لذلك سيكون يوما حافلًا. نحن ذاهبون بالتأكيد لجلب الكاميرات! يجب علينا إحضار وجبات الغداء الخاصة بنا أيضًا، لأنه لا يوجد متاجر هناك.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.




## (must / mustn't) يجب أن / يجب ألا

**Form** التكوين

**Subject + must / mustn't + inf.** (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. We must respect nature.

We mustn't leave trash in the desert.

**Usage** الاستخدام

- **We use "must" when we talk about something that we have to do or that is important to do.**

نستخدم "must" عند الحديث عن شيء يجب أن نقوم به أو من المهم أن نقوم به.

e.g. We must bring a tent.

- **We use "mustn't" when we are not allowed to do something.**

نستخدم "mustn't" عندما يكون غير مسموح لنا القيام بشيء ما.

e.g. We mustn't swim because there might be crocodiles!

### Study the following.

We'll travel to the oasis to see the water birds.

سنسافر إلى الواحة لرؤية الطيور المائية.



You mustn't scare the birds. You must study them quietly from a safe place.

يجب ألا تخيفي الطيور. يجب عليك دراستها بهدوء من مكان آمن.



### Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets

1. You .................................................... (mustn't) respect nature.
2. You mustn't ............................................ (scares) birds or animals.
3. You ................................................ (must) leave trash in the desert.
4. You must ............................ (is) careful in the natural environment.
5. You ........... (mustn't) walk to school today because there are no buses.
6. You ................................ (must) walk in the desert when it's hot.
7. You must ........................................................ (studies) hard.
8. Students ........................................ (mustn't) follow the school rules.
9. You ................................................ (must) throw trash on the beach.
10. We ........................................ (mustn't) drink much water. It's healthy.



Help your child use must / mustn't.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم must / mustn't.

# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I love visiting the desert with my ..................................................... .
   a) **family** b) **friends** c) **neighbors** d) **classmates**
2. We saw lots of wildlife when the ..................................................... went down.
   a) **moon** b) **sun** c) **star** d) **earth**
3. More ..................................................... live on the sand than you might think.
   a) **insects** b) **birds** c) **animals** d) **plants**
4. This year we'll stay outside and ..................................... meals under the stars.
   a) **buy** b) **sell** c) **bake** d) **cook**

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Eco-tourism is more ..................................................... than traditional tourism.
   a) **dangerous** b) **normal** c) **sustainable** d) **local**
2. In eco-tourism people stay in simple ..................................................... .
   a) **accommodation** b) **pollution** c) **vacation** d) **mountain**
3. Wildlife watching is ideal for people who ..................................................... nature.
   a) **hate** b) **respect** c) **damage** d) **destroy**
4. We go ..................................................... under water.
   a) **hiking** b) **sleeping** c) **migrating** d) **snorkeling**
5. She likes ..................................................... photos.
   a) **taking** b) **walking** c) **going** d) **talking**
6. On eco-tourism vacations, you see ..................................................... and animals.
   a) **big cities** b) **nature** c) **hotels** d) **movies**
7. On eco-tourism vacations you stay in ..................................................... places.
   a) **big** b) **modern** c) **short** d) **simple**
8. On eco-tourism vacations, people think about ..................................................... .
   a) **the environment** b) **shopping** c) **cooking** d) **running**
9. On eco-tourism vacations, the most important thing is not to ............. nature.
   a) **see** b) **protect** c) **respect** d) **hurt**
10. You can ..................................................... mountains or sail on the Nile.
    a) **go** b) **climb** c) **damage** d) **travel**

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

much - birds - beaches - many - busy

Next week, we're going on a tour to see some beautiful birds. We visit quiet 1) .................... on a small bus, to see how 2) .................... different kinds we can see. The sea in this area is very popular place for 3) .................... to find food, so it will be a 4) .................... day.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Egypt is an amazing country. There are many historical places to visit, as well as stores, markets, and museums. People can go snorkeling in the Red Sea, go on a desert safari, climb mountains, or on the Nile. So, tourism is important – but eco-tourism is becoming v popular, too. Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage th environment. It's more sustainable than traditional tourism, and it is designed to protect nature. People stay in simple accommodation, large hotels, and they mustn't travel in ways that cause lots of polluti

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The main idea of the text is ....................
   a) accommodation b) museums c) markets d) deserts
2. People can go snorkeling in the ....................
   a) Red Sea b) Lake c) River d) Pool
3. Eco-tourism is becoming very ....................
   a) unknown b) dangerous c) busy d) popular

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. What is eco-tourism?

....................

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....................



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد ابنك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## Lesson (2)

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. is - ideal - Wildlife - watching - people - for - respect - who - nature - .

.................................................................................................

2. study - birds - from - You - must - place - a safe - .

.................................................................................................

3. going - We - on - are - month - a tour - next - .

.................................................................................................

### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. You mustn't .................. (swimming) because there might be crocodiles.
2. You ........................................ (must) drop trash on the beach.
3. When we go camping, we ........................ (mustn't) take a tent.
4. You ........................................ (must) throw litter in the park.
5. You ........................................ (must) scare the birds.
6. Many kinds of birds migrate. They ........................ (mustn't) fly to different countries.
7. In the zoo, people ........................ (must) get too close to animals.

### 7 Punctuate the following.

- you mustn't scare the birds

.................................................................................................

### 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

**Eco-tourism in Egypt**

**Guiding elements:**

(sustainable - simple accommodation)

.................................................................................................

.................................................................................................

.................................................................................................



# Lesson (3) Part (A) THE BENEFITS OF ECO-TOURIS

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| traditional | تقليدي | presentation | قديمي |
| eco-tourist | سائح بيئي | damage | ضرر |
| hotel | فندق | score | |
| campsite | مخيم | thirsty | |
| deadline | موعد نهائي | points | |
| cycling | ركوب الدراجات | snack | خفيفة |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|
| cause | يسبب | caused | caused |
| create | يبتكر | created | created |
| miss | يفتقد / يفوته | missed | missed |
| explore | يستكشف | explored | explored |

### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|
| feel | يشعر | felt | felt |
| drink | يشرب | drank | drunk |

## Important expressions and prepositions وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| by bus | بالأتوبيس | for two hours | اعتين |
| outdoor hotel | فندق بالخارج | take care | - يعتني |
| do activities | يقوم بأنشطة | eco-friendly accommodation | قامة صديقة للبيئة |
| local people | السكان المحليون | keen to .... | ... أن |
| do sports | يمارس رياضة | go sightseeing | المعالم |



Help your child identify these words.

ك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Lesson (3)

### Do the quiz. How much of an eco-tourist are you?

**1. I like to travel...**
a) by boat
b) by car
c) by bicycle

**2. I like to stay...**
a) in a small, outdoor hotel room
b) on a campsite
c) in a big hotel

**3. On vacation, I like to...**
a) go sightseeing
b) do sports and activities
c) read a book

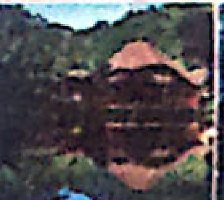
**4. I think eco-tourism is...**
a) a bit boring
b) interesting and fun
c) hard work but a good idea

**5. I think it's important that tourism...**
a) provides jobs for local people
b) gives tourists the vacations they want
c) looks after the environment

**6. I like being in nature because...**
a) it's quiet and relaxing
b) I can watch wildlife
c) the views are good

**Check your answers! What's your score?**

**1.** a 2; b 1; c 3
**2.** a 2; b 3; c 1
**3.** a 2; b 3; c 1
**4.** a 1; b 3; c 2
**5.** a 2; b 1; c 3
**6.** a 2; b 3; c 1





Score 1- 6 points: You prefer **traditional** vacations, but you can still be an eco-tourist by helping the environment while you're away. For example, try to walk or travel by bus and train, and recycle your trash whenever possible.

النتيجة من ١ إلى ٦ نقاط: أنت تفضل الإجازات التقليدية، ولكن لا يزال بإمكانك أن تكون سائحًا بيئيًا من خلال مساعدة البيئة أثناء وجودك فيها. على سبيل المثال، حاول المشي أو السفر بالحافلة والقطار، وقم بإعادة تدوير القمامة كلما أمكن ذلك.

Score 7 – 12 points: You want to take care of the environment and support local communities, so you are keen to learn more about eco-tourism. Next time you go on vacation, try out some eco-tourist activities like wildlife watching, cycling, or snorkeling.

النتيجة من ٧ إلى ١٢ نقطة: أنت تريد الاهتمام بالبيئة ودعم المجتمعات المحلية، لذلك أنت حريص على معرفة المزيد عن السياحة البيئية. في المرة القادمة التي تذهب فيها في إجازة، جرب بعض أنشطة السياحة البيئية مثل مشاهدة الحياة البرية أو ركوب الدراجات أو الغطس.

Score 13 – 18 points: You're a great eco-tourist! You like to explore new ways of traveling and do activities that don't damage the environment. Good for you!

النتيجة من ١٣ إلى ١٨ نقطة: أنت سائح بيئي عظيم! تحب استكشاف طرق جديدة للسفر والقيام بأنشطة لا تضر بالبيئة. أتمنى لك الخير!

Help your child do the quiz.
ساعد طفلك أن يقوم بحل الاختبار.



## (If) First Conditional "إذا / لو" الحالة الشرطية الأولى

### Form التكوين

**If + subject + present simple , subject + (will + inf.) ...**

e.g. **If** people **learn** more about the environment, they **will want** to protec

**Subject + will + inf. + if + present simple**

e.g. I **will buy** a car **if** I **have** a lot of money.

### Usage الاستخدام

- We use **the first conditional** to talk about things that are likely to happ in the future. دم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتحدث عن أشياء محتمل حدوثها في المستقبل.

e.g. **If** tourists **stay** in simple accommodation, there **won't be** so many big hotels.



**will = 'll** **will not = won't**

e.g. **If** I **am** hungry, **I'll eat** a snack.

**If** he **doesn't leave** now, he **won't catch** the bus.

### Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brack

1. If I .................................... (has) an exam, I'll study f
2. If you go to bed late, you .................................... (get) up
3. If Omar .................................... (play) football for two hours, he'll be t
4. If she feels thirsty, she .................................... (drink) some w
5. If we .................................... (not work) together, we'll miss the deac
6. If I .................................... (be) hungry, I'll eat a sn
7. He .................................... (catch) the bus if he goes to the station e
8. If he .................................... (be) free, he'll visi
9. She'll buy a new phone if she .................................... (have) a lot of mo
10. He .................................... (not visit) us if he is b
11. If she .................................... (got) up early, she'll catch the
12. If you study hard, you'll .................................... (passing) the ex



Help your child use the first conditional.
ك أن يستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى.

# Lesson (3) Part (B) CLIL: SCIENCE BIRD MIGRATION

## Key vocabulary
كلمات أساسية



kingfisher
طائر الرفراف


pelican
بجعة


swift
طائر السنونو / السمامة


eagle
نسر

## Extra vocabulary
كلمات إضافية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| migrate | يهاجر | flamingo | طائر الفلامنجو | Fayoum | الفيوم |
| northern | شمالي | across | عَبْر | distances | مسافات |
| winter | شتاء | journey | رحلة طويلة | oasis /oases | واحة / واحات |
| stars | نجوم | scientists | علماء | continent | قارة |

## Conjugation of verbs
تصريف الأفعال

| Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|
| seem | يبدوا | seemed | seemed |
| leave | يغادر | left | left |
| eat | يأكل | ate | eaten |
| find out | يكتشف | found out | found out |
| spend | يقضي وقتًا | spent | spent |

## Important expressions and prepositions
تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| European countries | دول أوروبية | warmer places | أماكن أكثر دفئًا |
| on the way | على الطريق | The Red Sea | البحر الأحمر |
| such as | مثل | Lake Qarun | بحيرة قارون |
| flocks of birds | أسراب من الطيور | Mediterranean Coasts | سواحل البحر المتوسط |

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

### A long journey



Many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it, because of where it is in the world. North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. This means that lots of interesting birds migrate to Egypt, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts.

تهاجر العديد من الطيور من وإلى مصر، وعبرها، بسبب مكانها في العالم. شمال أفريقيا أكثر حرارة من أوروبا، لذلك في فصل الشتاء، تغادر العديد من الطيور بلدان شمال أوروبا وتطير إلى مصر وغيرها من الأماكن الأكثر دفئا. وهذا يعني أن الكثير من الطيور المثيرة للاهتمام تهاجر إلى مصر، مثل النسور والصقور وطيور السمامة.

Many water birds migrate to Egypt, too. You can often see large flocks of birds such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean coasts, as well as on the Nile. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.

تهاجر العديد من الطيور المائية إلى مصر أيضًا. يمكنك في كثير من الأحيان رؤية أسراب كبيرة من الطيور مثل البجع بالقرب من المياه، على طول سواحل البحر الأحمر والبحر الأبيض المتوسط، وكذلك على نهر النيل. غالبًا ما تأكل هذه الطيور الأسماك أو النباتات التي تعيش في الأنهار والبحيرات والواحات والبحار. تعد بحيرة قارون بالفيوم مكانًا جيدًا لمشاهدة طيور الفلامنجو.

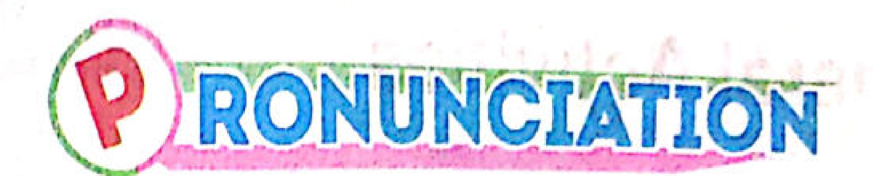
Some birds fly very long distances, making the same journey year after year. Even young birds that migrate for the first time seem to know how to get to the place they need to be. How do these birds know where to go? They might use the sun, the stars, or the things they can see on the way. Scientists have spent a long time trying to find out how they do this!

تطير بعض الطيور لمسافات طويلة جدًا، وتقوم بنفس الرحلة سنة بعد سنة. حتى الطيور الصغيرة التي تهاجر لأول مرة يبدو أنها تعرف كيفية الوصول إلى المكان الذي تحتاج إليه. كيف تعرف هذه الطيور إلى أين تذهب؟ قد يستخدمون الشمس أو النجوم أو الأشياء التي يمكنهم رؤيتها في الطريق. لقد أمضى العلماء وقتًا طويلاً في محاولة معرفة كيفية القيام بذلك!



Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.




## A syllable المقطع

It is a part of a word that contains a single vowel sound.

المقطع اللفظي هو جزء من كلمة ما يحتوي على صوت متحرك واحد.

**Stress:** The way in which a part of a word is emphasized more than the other parts while speaking.

النبرة أو الشدة: الطريقة التي يتم بها التأكيد على نطق جزء من الكلمة أكثر من الأجزاء الأخرى أثناء التحدث.

- Most two syllable words have the stress on the first syllable.

معظم الكلمات ذات المقطعين يكون المقطع الأول مشددًا.

weather - careful

- Three syllable words can have the stress on the **first** or the **second** syllable.

الكلمات ذات الثلاثة مقاطع من الممكن أن يكون التشديد على المقطع الأول أو الثاني.

successful - snorkeling - tourism - important

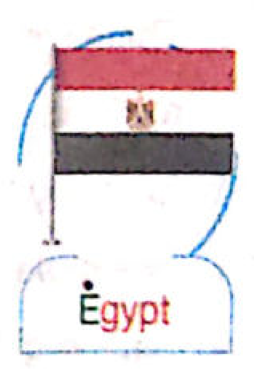
### Two syllables



falcon



eagle



Egypt

### Three syllables



flamingo



pelican



kingfisher

Help your child learn syllables.

ساعد طفلك في تعلم المقاطع الصوتية.

# General Activities



## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Some birds fly very .................... distances, making the same journey
   a) long b) short c) small d) new
2. Even .................... birds know how to get to the place they need to be
   a) old b) young c) modern d) little
3. Birds might use the .................... or the stars to know where to go
   a) planet b) moon c) sun d) son
4. .................... have spent a long time trying to find out how the birds do this
   a) Teachers b) Doctors c) Scientists d) Footballers

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Many birds migrate to find .................... weather in winter
   a) bad b) colder c) warmer d) snowy
2. There are often large .................... of water birds near lakes and oases
   a) flocks b) rocks c) clocks d) socks
3. Migrating birds fly very .................... distances
   a) simple b) short c) long d) tiny
4. Birds might use the sun or the .................... to find out where to go
   a) earth b) stars c) ground d) floor
5. Lots of birds migrate to Egypt, such as eagles and ....................
   a) monkeys b) elephants c) lions d) swifts
6. Many birds .................... to and from Egypt every year
   a) sleep b) migrate c) eat d) hatches



Help your child deal with such questions.

...طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**Qarun - fish - flocks - rivers - hurt**

Many water birds migrate to Egypt. You can see large 1) .................... of birds such as pelicans near water. These birds eat 2) .................... or plants that live in the 3) ...................., lakes, oases and seas. Lake 4) .................... in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it, because of where it is in the world. North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. This means that lots of interesting birds migrate to Egypt, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts. Many water birds migrate to Egypt, too. You can often see large flocks of birds such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean coasts, as well as on the Nile. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....................
   a) Egypt b) Africa c) Europe d) Fayoum
2. Europe is .................... than North Africa.
   a) colder b) cooler c) hotter d) wetter
3. You can see flamingos in ....................
   a) Aswan b) Fayoum c) Luxor d) Giza

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. What do often birds eat?

....................................................................

5. What's the main idea of the passage?

....................................................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. in - snorkeling - We - go - hot - weather - .

..................................................................................................

2. fly - very - birds - Some - distances - long - .

..................................................................................................

3. important - Tourism - Egypt - very - is - in - .

..................................................................................................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. If she ............................................ (feel) hungry, she'll have a snack.
2. If you don't sleep early, you ............................................ (get) up early.
3. If tourists .................. (takes) care of the places they visit, they will cause less damage to the environment.
4. If people learn more about the environment, they ...................... (want) to protect it.
5. If tourists stay in simple, eco-friendly accommodation, there ...... (not be) so many big hotels.
6. If eco-tourism .................... (be) successful, it will create new jobs for the local people.

## 7 Punctuate the following.

- what do migrating birds eat

..................................................................................................

## 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

**Bird migration**

**Guiding elements:**

**(migrate - North Africa - warmer)**

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

# Lessons (4 & 5) WRITING: A BLOG PROJECT

## Vocabulary الكلمات

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| blog | مدونة | problem | مشكلة | area | منطقة |
| important | هام | snorkel | يغطس بأنبوب تنفس وقناع | sharks | أسماك القرش |
| healthy | صحي | scuba dive | يغوص تحت الماء | safe | آمن |
| rivers | أنهار | floods | فيضانات | fires | حرائق |
| insects | حشرات | planet | كوكب | drought | جفاف |

## Animal Habitats مواطن وبيئات الحيوانات

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| forests | الغابات | the mountains | الجبال | the rivers | الأنهار |
| the desert | الصحراء | the seas | البحار | | |



## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| for example | على سبيل المثال | cut down trees | يقطع الأشجار |
| good for | مفيد لـ | clean up | ينظف |
| famous for | مشهور بـ | many types of | أنواع عديدة من |
| great for | رائع لـ | garden box | حوض زراعة النباتات |
| look after | يعتني بـ | a lot of space | مساحة كبيرة |
| make sure | يتأكد | all over the world | في جميع أنحاء العالم |
| waste water | يهدر المياه | Sinai Peninsula | شبه جزيرة سيناء |
| recycle paper | يعيد تدوير الورق | The Ras Mohammed National Park | محمية رأس محمد الوطنية |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|
| waste | يهدر - يبدد | wasted | wasted |
| protect | يحمي | protected | protected |
| plant | يزرع | planted | planted |
| recycle | يعيد تدوير | recycled | recycled |
| drop | يُسقط | dropped | dropped |
| try | يحاول | tried | tried |

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

**Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.

# What's a habitat

Home Archive Contact Pages

Hello, I'm Arwa – welcome to my blog! I'm writing today about something which I think is really important.

مرحبًا، أنا أروى – مرحبًا بكم في مدونتي! أكتب اليوم عن شيء أعتقد أنه مهم جدًا.

I think we should all try to protect animal habitats. Animals need safe places to live, find food, and look after their babies. They are part of our planet, so we must make sure that the things we do don't hurt them.

أعتقد أنه ينبغي أن نحاول جميعًا حماية البيئات الحيوانية. تحتاج الحيوانات إلى أماكن آمنة للعيش فيها، والعثور على الطعام، ورعاية صغارها. إنهم جزء من كوكبنا، لذا يجب علينا التأكد من أن الأشياء التي نقوم بها لا تؤذيهم.

There are lots of different habitats in Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers. It is good for everybody if we protect these habitats. For example, when a habitat is healthy, lots of animals can live in one place. With good eco-tourism, people can come on wildlife-watching holidays. This is good for the country, and good for the people, too. When people learn about wildlife, they want to protect it.

هناك الكثير من البيئات المختلفة في مصر، مثل الصحراء والبحر والجبال والأنهار. إنه أمر جيد للجميع إذا قمنا بحماية هذه البيئات. على سبيل المثال، عندما يكون الموطن صحيًا، يمكن للعديد من الحيوانات أن تعيش في مكان واحد. ومع السياحة البيئية الجيدة، يمكن للناس القدوم لقضاء إجازات لمشاهدة الحياة البرية. وهذا أمر جيد لبلدنا، وجيد للناس أيضًا. عندما يتعلم الناس عن الحياة البرية، فهم يريدون حمايتها.

We can all think about things we can do to protect habitats. For example, we mustn't waste water or drop litter. We can recycle paper, so people don't cut down trees. We can also plant flowers and plants, because these are great for birds and insects. You don't need a lot of space – here's a garden box I made for my window!



يمكننا جميعًا التفكير في الأشياء التي يمكننا القيام بها لحماية هذه البيئات. على سبيل المثال، يجب ألا نهدر الماء أو نلقي القمامة. يمكننا إعادة تدوير الورق، حتى لا يقطع الناس الأشجار. يمكننا أيضًا زراعة الزهور والنباتات، لأنها مفيدة للطيور والحشرات. أنت لا تحتاج إلى مساحة كبيرة - إليك حوض النباتات الذي صنعته لنافذتي!

**Note:** A habitat is a place where an animal or plant lives.

البيئة أو الموطن هو المكان الذي يعيش فيه الحيوان أو النبات.

## Read and learn: Causes and effects

| Causes أسباب | Effects تأثيرات (النتائج) |
|---|---|
| There are floods droughts or fires.<br>يوجد فيضانات أوجفاف أوحرائق. | Animals habitats are damaged.<br>يلحق الضرر بمواطن الخيوانات. |
| Animal habitats are damaged.<br>إلحاق الضرر بمواطن الحيوانات. | Animals don't have safe places to live, find food, or look after babies.<br>لا تجد الحيوانات أماكن آمنة للحياة ولا تجد طعام ولا تستطيع العناية بصغارها. |
| A habitat is safe and healthy.<br>الموطن آمن وصحي. | Lots of animals can live there.<br>يمكن للكثير من الحيوانات العيش فيه. |
| We recycle paper.<br>نقوم بإعادة تدوير الورق. | Trees aren't cut down.<br>لا يتم قطع الأشجار. |
| We grow plants and flowers.<br>نقوم بزراعة النباتات والزهور. | Birds and insects have food.<br>يمكن للطيور والحشرات إيجاد الطعام. |

## Study the following

**and** (و) تفيد العطف

We saw turtles, pelicans **and** lizards when we went wildlife watching.

**but** (لكن) تفيد التناقض

This was a beautiful river, **but** there is pollution in it now.

**because** (لأن) لبيان السبب

We wanted to clean up the beach **because** there was trash on it.

**so** (لذلك) لبيان النتيجة

We planted flowers **so** birds and insects can have more food.

## When you write a blog about animal habitats, you write about:

عندما تكتب مدونة عن البيئات الحيوانية، يمكن أن تكتب عن:

- Which animals live there. أي الحيوانات تعيش في هذا الموطن.
- Which plants live there. أي النباتات تعيش في هذا الموطن.
- What problems this habitat has. ما هي المشاكل الموجودة بالموطن.
- How we can help it. كيف يمكننا مساعدة هذا الموطن.

كما يمكن أن نستخدم الروابط (and - but - so - because) لبيان الأسباب والتأثيرات و (must - mustn't) لبيان ما هو مهم.

Write a blog about the Nile habitat.

..........................................................................................................................




## Read the leaflet.

اقرأ المنشور.



### The Ras Mohammed National Park

The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and **scuba dive** here.

تعد محمية رأس محمد الوطنية على البحر الأحمر منطقة رائعة يمكن للسكان المحليين والسياح زيارتها. تشتهر هذه المنطقة الجميلة في شبه جزيرة سيناء بالحياة البحرية والمياه الدافئة والطقس المذهل. يأتي الناس من جميع أنحاء العالم للغطس والغوص هنا.

You can see coral reefs and lots of brightly colored fish, and maybe sharks. There is lots of other wildlife, too, and it is a great place for bird-watching.

يمكنك رؤية الشعاب المرجانية والكثير من الأسماك ذات الألوان الزاهية، وربما أسماك القرش. هناك الكثير من الحيوانات البرية الأخرى أيضًا، وهي مكان رائع لمشاهدة الطيور.

The National Park is protected, but people are allowed to visit. Because it is so beautiful, lots of visitors come and ride boats, or swim and snorkel in the sea.

الحديقة الوطنية محمية، ولكن يُسمح للناس بزيارتها. ولأنها جميلة جدًا، يأتي الكثير من الزوار ويركبون القوارب، أو يسبحون ويغطسون في البحر.

## Creating a leaflet

عمل منشور أو كُتيب

- **When you write an information leaflet for visitors to a habitat, you can write about.**

عند كتابة منشور إعلامي لزوار موطن ما، يمكنك الكتابة عن.

- **where it is and what wildlife you can see there.**

مكان الموطن وأي حياة برية يمكنك أن تراها هناك.

- **why it is an important and interesting place.**

لماذا هذا المكان هام وشيق.

- **add some pictures**

أضف بعض الصور.

Create a leaflet about the Nile Delta.

........................................................................................................

........................................................................................................

........................................................................................................

........................................................................................................

# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Ras Mohammed National .................................... is on the Red Sea.
   a) Club b) Shop c) Store d) Park
2. It's a fantastic area for locals and .................................... to visit.
   a) scientists b) farmers c) tourists d) doctors
3. This beautiful area is on the .................................... Peninsula.
   a) Aswan b) Sinai c) Luxor d) Siwa
4. People come from all over the world to .................... and scuba dive here.
   a) run b) play c) snorkel d) swim

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We can plant flowers and plants to .................................... animal habitats.
   a) help b) waste c) damage d) hurt
2. Animals need safe places to find .................................... .
   a) babies b) food c) air d) metal
3. In Egypt, there are .................................... types of habitat.
   a) many b) much c) one d) no
4. People can go on wildlife .................................... vacations.
   a) watching b) changing c) riding d) waiting

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

run - snorkel - watching - coral - fish

In the Ras Mohammed National Park you can see 1) ............... reefs and lots of brightly colored 2) .......................... and maybe sharks. There is lots of other wildlife, too, and it is a great place for bird 3) ............................ . The National Park is protected, but people are allowed to visit. Because it is so beautiful, lots of visitors come and ride boats, or swim and 4) ............... in the sea.





## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm writing today about something which I think is really important. I thi[nk] we should all try to protect animal habitats. Animals need safe places to live, fi[nd] food, and look after their babies. They are part of our planet, so we must ma[ke] sure that the things we do, don't hurt **them**. There are lots of different habitats [in] Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers. It is good for everybody [if] we protect these habitats. For example, when a habitat is healthy, lots of animals can live in one place. With good eco-tourism, people can come on wildlife watching holidays.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. We should all try to protect animal ..........................
   a) food  b) legs  c) habits  d) habitats
2. Animals need .......................... places to live i[n]
   a) safe  b) unsafe  c) small  d) close
3. When a habitat is .........................., lots of animals can live in one plac[e]
   a) unhealthy  b) large  c) long  d) healthy

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. What are the habitats in Egypt? ..........................
5. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to? ..........................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. drop - waste - We - mustn't - or - water - litter - .

..........................

2. coral - the - in - You - Sea - can - Red - see - reefs - .

..........................

## 6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

**A blog about the forest habitat**

**Guiding elements:**

- which animals live there
- which plants live there
- what problems this habitat has
- how we can help it

# Writing Corner

## A famous proverb

A proverb is a well-known phrase about something which is generally true. It has another meaning as well as its exact meaning. "The early bird catches the worm". This proverb tells us that a bird that is early, or the first to try to catch a worm, usually catches it. So, it also means that to be successful, you need to be the first to do something.

## Eco-tourism in Egypt

Egypt is an amazing country. There are many historical places to visit, as well as stores, markets and museums. Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment. It's more sustainable than traditional tourism. People stay in simple accommodation, not large hotels. They mustn't travel in ways that cause pollution. They can visit Egypt for bird and wildlife watching.

## Bird migration

Many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it, because of where it is in the world. North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. This means that lots of interesting birds migrate to Egypt, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts.

## A blog about animal habitats

Home Archive Contact Pages

Hello, I'm Sarah – welcome to my blog! I'm writing today about something which I think is really important. I think we should all try to protect animal habitats. Animals need safe places to live, find food, and look after their babies. They are part of our planet, so we must make sure that the things we do, don't hurt them or their habitats.

# Review on Unit (10)

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| successful | ناجح | camp | يم معسكر |
| similar | متشابه | coral reefs | عاب المرجانية |
| real | حقيقي | protected area | طقة محمية |
| sensible | عاقل / حكيم | tourists | ياح |
| eco-tourism | السياحة البيئية | damage | ف / يضر |
| sustainable | مستدام (ملائم للبيئة) | pelican | جعة |
| ideal | مثالي | kingfisher | ئر الرفراف |
| respect | يحترم | swift | ئر السنونو / السمامة |
| simple | بسيط | eagle | سر |
| accommodation | أماكن إقامة / سكن | migrate | هاجر |
| scuba dive | الغوص بأنبوب تنفس | close to | ريب من |
| wildlife | الحياة البرية | desert | محراء |
| mountains | الجبال | forest | غابة |
| habitat | موطن - بيئة | space | ساحة فارغة |

## Activities

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| hiking | التنزه سيرًا على الأقدام | visiting beaches | يارة الشواطئ |
| snorkeling | الغطس بأنبوب التنفس | cooking outdoors | طهي بالخارج |
| watching movies | مشاهدة الأفلام | traveling on a river | تنقل عبر النهر |
| taking photos | التقاط الصور | taking photos underwater | تقاط الصور تحت الماء |
| going to restaurants | الذهاب للمطاعم | wildlife-watching | شاهدة الحياة البرية |



Help your child revise unit (10).
اعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة العاشرة.

## Pronunciation

| Two syllables | Three syllables |
|---|---|
| weather | flamingo |
| falcon | successful |
| careful | pelican |

## Grammar

Necessity الضرورة والإلزام

**must + inf.** المصدر يجب أن..

تستخدم للتعبير عن الضرورة لعمل شيء ما

e.g. You must protect the environment.

**mustn't + inf.** المصدر يجب ألا..

تستخدم للتعبير عن عدم السماح بعمل شيء

e.g. You mustn't smoke here.

## (If) First Conditional

"إذا / لو" الحالة الشرطية الأولى

### Form التكوين

**If + subject + present simple , subject + (will + inf.) ...**

e.g. **If** people **learn** more about the environment, they **will want** to protect it.

### Usage الاستخدام

- **We use the first conditional to talk about things that are likely to happen in the future.** تستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتحدث عن أشياء محتمل حدوثها في المستقبل.

e.g. **If** tourists **stay** in simple accommodation, there **won't be** so many big hotels.

# Dictation on Unit (10)

## Lesson (1)

| | |
|---|---|
| بي ........................ | ناجح ........................ |
| ل / حكيم ........................ | متشابه ........................ |
| ........................ | حريص ........................ |

## Lesson (2)

| | |
|---|---|
| يط ........................ | السياحة البيئية ........................ |
| كن إقامة / سكن ........................ | مستدام - ملائم للبيئة ........................ |
| حي ........................ | مثالي ........................ |
| شعاب المرجانية ........................ | يحترم ........................ |

## Lesson (3)

| | |
|---|---|
| اجر ........................ | بجعة ........................ |
| صقر ........................ | طائر الرفراف ........................ |
| ائر الفلامنجو ........................ | طائر السنونو / السمامة ........................ |

## Lessons (4 & 5)

| | |
|---|---|
| وطن - بيئة ........................ | قريب من ........................ |
| شعاب مرجانية ........................ | الصحراء ........................ |
| سبب ........................ | مدونة ........................ |
| ثير ........................ | الجبال ........................ |
| لغوص تحت الماء ........................ | الغابة ........................ |



Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We mustn't waste .................................................... or drop litter.
   a) money  b) water  c) time  d) energy
2. We can recycle.................................................................... .
   a) cans  b) papyrus  c) paper  d) glass
3. We can also plant .................................................................... .
   a) oranges  b) tomatoes  c) potatoes  d) flowers
4. Plants and flowers are great for birds and .......................................... .
   a) insects  b) cows  c) monkeys  d) lions

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. When people .............................. the environment, they want to protect it.
   a) trip  b) respect  c) damage  d) hurt
2. Eco-tourism is more .... than vacations which don't care about the environment.
   a) sustainable  b) dangerous  c) expensive  d) similar
3. Many birds ............................................... to find warmer weather in Egypt.
   a) take  b) respect  c) migrate  d) save
4. Things that are .............................. look the same or do the same things.
   a) different  b) close  c) remote  d) similar

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**meat - Lake - Nile - birds - plants**

Many water birds migrate to Egypt. You can often see large flocks of **1)** ......................... such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean coasts, as well as on the **2)** ......................... These birds often eat fish or **3)** ......................... that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. **4)** ......................... Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba dive here. You can see coral reefs and lots of brightly colored fish, and maybe sharks. There is lots of other wildlife, too, and it is a great place for bird-watching. The National Park is protected, but people are allowed to visit. Because it is so beautiful, lots of visitors come and ride boats, or swim and snorkel in the sea.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The Ras Mohammed National .................................... is on the Red Sea.
   a) **Park** b) **Club** c) **Oasis** d) **Wild**
2. You can see coral .............................................. and lots of fish there.
   a) **roofs** b) **reefs** c) **birds** d) **stones**
3. People come to snorkel and ...................................................... dive there.
   a) **scape** b) **tour** c) **scuba** d) **ride**

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. What is the Sinai Peninsula famous for? ..........................................
5. What does the underlined word "its" refer to? ..........................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. we - protect - I - habitats - animal - should - think - .
   ..........................................................................................
2. fly - distances - long - Migrating - very - birds - .
   ..........................................................................................
3. leave - You - desert - the - in - trash - mustn't - .
   ..........................................................................................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. We (mustn't) ........................ respect nature when we go wildlife-watching.
2. If she (learn) .......................................... to bake, she'll save a lot of money.

## 7 Punctuate the following.

- you mustn t smoke in hospitals. ..........................................

## 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about "Your favorite bird":

**Guiding elements:** - What's the bird's name?
- Where does it live? - What does it look like?



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

# Al-Azhar Corner

## 1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

**Where - long - ostrich - wild - bird**

Sara : What's your favorite 1) ........................................?
Salma: It's the 2) ........................................
Sara : How 3) ........................................ is it?
Salma: It's about 210 cm long.
Sara : 4) ........................................ does it live?
Salma: It lives in the 5) ........................................

## Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

**England - places - welcome - come - Pyramids**

Amir : Hi! 1) ........................................ to Egypt.
John : Hi! Thank you.
Amir : Where do you 2) ........................................ from?
John : I come from 3) ........................................ .
Amir : What 4) ........................................ did you visit in Egypt?
John : I visited the 5) ........................................ and the Sphinx.

## 2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | careful | successful | sensible | play | (........................) |
| 2. | big | see | small | simple | (........................) |
| 3. | read | red | white | blue | (........................) |
| 4. | went | saw | took | study | (........................) |
| 5. | and | but | play | so | (........................) |

## Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | desert | sea | mountain | eat | (........................) |
| 2. | migrate | pelican | kingfisher | swift | (........................) |
| 3. | watching | go | taking | hiking | (........................) |
| 4. | make | grow | come | visited | (........................) |
| 5. | habitat | happy | healthy | safe | (........................) |

# Unit 11

# How can I help?

## In this unit, the students will ...

- listen, read, research, and write about charity work and volunteering.
- use infinitives of purpose.
- read and understand three texts about mystery objects.
- listen to an interview about volunteering.
- use -ly and other adverbs.
- read and understand a story about two brothers.
- say words containing sh, ch, and tch.
- Write a biography of a volunteer.
- create a leaflet about being a good citizen.

# Lesson 1 WHY DO YOU WANT TO HELP?

## Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| donate | يتبرع | support | يدعم / يساند |
| participate | يشارك | volunteer | يتطوع |

## Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| particular | خاص | organization | منظمة | habitat | موطن |
| project | مشروع | community help | مساعدة المجتمع | neighbor | جار |
| trash | قمامة | kindergarten | حضانة / الروضة | vacation | أجازة |

## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

| Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|
| train | يتدرب | trained | trained |
| donate | يتبرع | donated | donated |
| participate | يشارك | participated | participated |
| support | يساند / يدعم | supported | supported |
| volunteer | يتطوع | volunteered | volunteered |
| choose | يختار | chose | chosen |
| grow | يزرع | grew | grown |

## Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| take part in | يشارك في | start up | يبدأ |
| give away | يتبرع | look forward to | يتطلع إلى |
| an after-school club | نادي بعد المدرسة | kind to | عطوف مع |
| a bit nervous | متوتر قليلًا | used to | اعتاد أن |
| at first | في بادئ الأمر | look after | يعتني بـ |
| get better | يتحسن | look for | يبحث عن |
| help out | يساعد في | live alone | يعيش بمفرده |

## Definitions

تعريفات

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| support | to do things that help a particular person or group | يساند / يدعم |
| participate | to take part in something | يشارك |
| volunteer | to do a job or activity and not take any money for it | يتطوع |
| donate | to give something away to help a person or organization | يتبرع |

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



Hi, I'm Tamer. At school, we started a project called Community Help. We all had to choose something we could do to **support** other people or things in our community. There were lots of ideas. For example, some people wanted to start a vegetable garden in the school to grow fresh fruit and vegetables. That was really popular. Other people **volunteered** to help clean trash from the river, so that animals' habitats are safer.

I decided that I wanted to help children in my school. I love sports, so I started an after-school club to teach the younger children football skills. I was a bit nervous at first, but lots of children joined in and their parents were very happy. It was great to have so many children **participating**.

I teach the class after school on Wednesdays. The class is for 45 minutes, and we train and play games. I like seeing the children get better at football, and it's really good fun, too.

مرحبًا، أنا تامر. في المدرسة، بدأنا مشروعًا يسمى مساعدة المجتمع. كان علينا جميعًا أن نختار شيئًا يمكننا القيام به لدعم الأشخاص أو الأشياء الأخرى في مجتمعنا. كان هناك الكثير من الأفكار. على سبيل المثال، أراد بعض الأشخاص إنشاء حديقة نباتية في المدرسة لزراعة الفواكه والخضروات الطازجة. كان ذلك محبوبًا جدًا. وتطوع أشخاص آخرون للمساعدة في تنظيف القمامة من النهر، حتى تكون مواطن الحيوانات أكثر أمانًا.

قررت أنني أريد مساعدة الأطفال في مدرستي. أنا أحب الرياضة، لذلك أنشأت ناديًا بعد المدرسة لتعليم الأطفال الصغار مهارات كرة القدم. كنت متوترًا بعض الشيء في البداية، ولكن انضم الكثير من الأطفال وكان آباؤهم سعداء للغاية. وكان من الرائع أن يشارك هذا العدد الكبير من الأطفال.

أقوم بتدريس الطلاب بعد المدرسة يوم الأربعاء. مدة الحصة 45 دقيقة، ونحن نتدرب ونلعب الألعاب. أحب رؤية الأطفال وهم يتحسنون في كرة القدم، وهو شئ ممتع جدًا.

### Answer the following:

1. Who did Tamer want to help? ..........................................
2. What does Tamer like seeing? ..........................................
3. How often does Tamer volunteer? ..........................................



Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

## Listen and read about:

استمع واقرأ عن:

# Some more ideas for the Community Help Project.

### Reem



I love reading, so I decided to **help out** in the kindergarten class on a Thursday by reading to the children. I love reading stories with the younger children, and they like it too. We're **starting up** a project where they think of their own stories next week. I'm looking forward to that.

أحب القراءة، لذلك قررت أن أساعد الأطفال في صف رياض الأطفال يوم الخميس من خلال القراءة للأطفال. أحب قراءة القصص مع الأطفال الصغار، وهم يحبون ذلك أيضًا.
نحن نبدأ مشروعًا حيث يفكرون في قصصهم الخاصة الأسبوع المقبل. أنا أتطلع إلى ذلك.

### Ibrahim

My little sister was sick last month, and she was in the hospital. She's better now, but when we visited her, she was sad because she didn't like being there. I thought it would be nice to do something for children who are sick. My friends and I painted lots of big pictures of flowers, animals, beaches, and trees. Our parents **donated** lots of toys too. We took these and the paintings to the hospital to make the rooms look nicer.

كانت أختي الصغيرة مريضة الشهر الماضي، وكانت في المستشفى. وهي الآن أفضل، ولكن عندما زرناها كانت حزينة لأنها لم تكن تحب أن تكون هناك. اعتقدت أنه سيكون من الجيد أن أفعل شيئًا للأطفال المرضى. لقد رسمت أنا وأصدقائي الكثير من الصور الكبيرة للزهور والحيوانات والشواطئ والأشجار. تبرع آباؤنا بالكثير من الألعاب أيضًا. أخذنا هذه الالعاب واللوحات إلى المستشفى لجعل الغرف تبدو أجمل.

### Mariam

My neighbor has always **been kind to** us. She used to help my mom **look after** me when I was younger. Now she's getting a bit older, and it's sometimes difficult for her to go shopping. So I ask her what she needs, then I go to the stores and get it. I like to help her.

لقد كانت جارتي دائمًا لطيفة معنا. كانت تساعد أمي في الاعتناء بي عندما كنت أصغر سناً. لقد كبرت الآن قليلاً، وأصبح من الصعب عليها أحيانًا الذهاب للتسوق. لذلك أسألها عما تحتاجه، ثم أذهب إلى المتاجر وأحضره. أنا أحب مساعدتها.

## Answer the following:

1. What did Reem decide to do? ..........
2. Why was Ibrahim's sister sad? ..........
3. What did Mariam's neighbor use to do? ..........

# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My neighbor has always been .................................................. to us.
   a) clever b) cruel c) kind d) bad
2. She used to help my .................................................. look after me.
   a) aunt b) sister c) uncle d) mom
3. It's sometimes .................................................. for her to go shopping.
   a) easy b) difficult c) good d) bad
4. I go to the .................................................. and get it. I like to help her.
   a) stores b) schools c) hospitals d) clubs

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I think it's very important to be kind .................................................. animals
   a) of b) to c) at d) in
2. To give something away to help a person or organization means ......... .
   a) volunteer b) support c) participate d) donate
3. My mom sometimes helps .................................................. at the school library.
   a) above b) out c) down d) up
4. To take part in something means to .................................................. .
   a) donate b) support c) participate d) volunteer
5. I looked .................... my neighbors' pet cat when they went on vacation.
   a) before b) up c) forward d) after
6. .................... means to do a job or activity and not take any money for it.
   a) Support b) Volunteer c) Donate d) Participate
7. We decided to start .................................................. a local children's charity.
   a) up b) down c) on d) at
8. I help my neighbor because she lives .................................................. .
   a) lonely b) alone c) away d) nervous
9. I'm looking .................................................. to my holiday.
   a) after b) forward c) for d) up
10. She lost her pen. She looked .................................................. it everywhere.
    a) at b) in c) to d) for
11. When I was young, I .................................................. to help my neighbor.
    a) use b) used c) ran d) did
12. I look after my little brother .................................................. I like to help my mom.
    a) so b) because c) that d) to



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

forward - books - donate - starting up - help out

I love reading very much. I have lots of 1) .................... at home. I decided to 2) .................... in the kindergarten class by reading to the children. We're 3) .................... a project where they think of their own stories next week. I'm looking 4) .................... to that.

## 4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Last week, my friends started a project called Community Help. They wanted to choose something they could do to support people and things in their community. Some of them wanted to start a vegetable garden in their area to grow fresh fruit and vegetables. Other friends volunteered to help clean the trash from the river, so that animals' habitats are safer. I decided to help children in my school. I started an after-school club to teach <u>them</u> football skills. It was great to have so many children participating.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Some of my friends wanted to start a vegetable .................... .
   a) market b) garden c) fair d) place
2. I decided to help children in my .................... .
   a) club b) centre c) school d) fun fair
3. They wanted to .................... people and things.
   a) donate b) participate c) support d) volunteer

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. What is the main idea of the passage? ....................
5. What does the underlined word "them" refer to? ....................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. reading - children - <u>I</u> - the younger - stories - with - love - .
....................
2. neighbor - alone - <u>I</u> - lives - because - help - she - my - .
....................
3. want - grow - did - people - <u>What</u> - some - to - ?
....................

## 6 Punctuate the following.

- i want to help children in my school ....................

# Lesson (2) WE USE THIS TO PICK UP THE TRASH

## Listen and say.






nature camera
كاميرا لتصوير الطبيعة



grabber
لاقط / ماسك



multi-grip
قبضة متعددة الأغراض



photocopier
آلة تصوير



laptop
حاسوب محمول



camera
كاميرا / آلة تصوير



speaker
مكبر صوت



headphones
سماعة رأس



scooter
سكوتر



radio
راديو



breathing mask
قناع التنفس



joysticks
ذراع / عصا التحكم



## Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

| handle | مقبض | day center | مركز رعاية نهاري |
|---|---|---|---|
| film | يصور | record | يُسجل |
| button | زر | install | يركب / يثبت |
| controller | جهاز تحكم | take off | يزيل |



Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| gloves | قفازات | games console | وحدة تحكم ألعاب |
| metal stick | عصا معدنية | forest | غابة |
| exhibition | معرض | menu | قائمة |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال



### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|
| clean up | ينظف | cleaned up | cleaned up |
| pick up | يلتقط | picked up | picked up |
| squeeze | يعصر | squeezed | squeezed |
| press | يضغط | pressed | pressed |

### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|
| wear | يرتدي / يلبس | wore | worn |
| buy | يشتري | bought | bought |
| put | يضع | put | put |

## Definitions تعريفات

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **button** | something you press to make something happen | زر |
| **joysticks** | something you can move in different directions to control a computer game | ذراع / عصا تحكم |
| **controller** | something we use to play a computer game | جهاز تحكم |

## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

**Tamim**

When we do a beach clean-up, we wear gloves to protect our hands. We carry black bags for the trash we collect. And look! We use this to pick up the trash. It's great fun to use. It's a long metal stick with two fingers at the end. The fingers open and close when you squeeze the handle at the top. You open and close the fingers to pick up the trash, then drop it in the bag. Mom says it's better than picking things up with your hands.

عندما نقوم بتنظيف الشاطئ، نرتدي قفازات لحماية أيدينا. نحمل أكياسًا سوداء للقمامة التي نجمعها. وانظر! نحن نستخدم هذا لالتقاط القمامة. إنه ممتع جدًا في استخدامه. إنها عصا معدنية طويلة بذراعين في نهايتها. تفتح الأذرع وتغلق عند الضغط على المقبض في الأعلى. تقوم بفتح وإغلاق الأذرع لالتقاط المهملات، ثم تضعها في الكيس. تقول أمي إنه أفضل من التقاط الأشياء بيديك.

**Dalida**

I volunteer at a **day center** for old people. Some old people can't open glass bottles and jars. Their hands aren't strong enough. So they use this to take off the tops. This is how you use it. Hold the jar with one hand and put this on the top. Hold this part with your other hand, and then turn it around. It's really easy to use. I love showing this to the people at the day center.

أنا أتطوع في مركز نهاري لكبار السن. بعض كبار السن لا يستطيعون فتح الزجاجات والبرطمانات. أيديهم ليست قوية بما فيه الكفاية. لذلك يستخدمون هذا لفتح الأغطية. هذه هي طريقة استخدامه. أمسك البرطمان بيد واحدة وضع هذا على الغطاء. أمسك هذا الجزء بيدك الأخرى، ثم قم بتدويره. إنها حقًا سهلة الاستعمال. أحب أن أعرض هذا على الأشخاص في المركز النهاري.

**Hamza**

We're doing a wildlife project at school, and my teacher **installed** two of these in the forest. We're using them to **film** wildlife. He put one on the ground to film animals at night. He put the other in a tree to film birds during the day. Then we **record** how many animals and birds we see, and what they're doing. It's so interesting. We've learned a lot!

نحن نقوم بتنفيذ مشروع عن الحياة البرية في المدرسة، وقد قام معلمي بتركيب اثنين من هذه في الغابة. نحن نستخدمها لتصوير الحياة البرية. لقد وضع واحدة على الأرض لتصوير الحيوانات ليلاً. ووضع الأخرى في شجرة لتصوير الطيور أثناء النهار. ثم نسجل عدد الحيوانات والطيور التي نراها وماذا يفعلون. إنه أمر مثير للاهتمام. لقد تعلمنا الكثير!

## Answer the following:

1. Why does Tamim use a grabber on a beach clean-up? ..........
2. Why do the old people use a multi-grip? ..........
3. Why does Hamza's teacher put nature cameras in the forest? ..........



Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

## Lesson (2)

### Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

**Mom** : Hi Amira. Is this your new games console? It looks great. What's this part for?
مرحبا أميرة. هل هذه وحدة تحكم الألعاب الجديدة الخاصة بك؟ تبدو رائعة. ما هذا الجزء؟

**Amira** : Oh, that's the **controller**. It's what you use to play the game.
أوه، هذا هو جهاز التحكم. هذا ما تستخدمه للعب اللعبة.

**Mom** : Cool! And what does this do? رائع! وما وظيفة هذا؟

**Amira** : That's the home **button**. When you press it, it takes you back to the menu.
هذا هو زر الصفحة الرئيسية. وعندما تضغط عليه يعود بك إلى القائمة.

**Mom** : OK. And what are these buttons for? حسنًا. وفيم تستخدم هذه الأزرار؟

**Amira** : Those are the action buttons. You use them to tell your character to run, jump, or do other actions.
تلك هي أزرار الحركة. يمكنك استخدامها لإخبار شخصيتك بالجري أو القفز أو القيام بحركات أخرى.

**Mom** : And what are these parts for? وفيم تستخدم هذه الأجزاء؟

**Amira** : They're the **joysticks**. They help you move your character around.
إنها عصا التحكم. إنها تساعدك على تحريك شخصيتك.

**Mom** : OK. So, the home button takes you to the menu, and the buttons and joysticks are for playing the game.
حسنًا. إذن، ينقلك زر الصفحة الرئيسية إلى القائمة، والأزرار وعصا التحكم مخصصة للعب اللعبة.

**Amira** : That's right. Do you want to play a game with me?
هذا صحيح. هل تريدي أن تلعبي لعبة معي؟

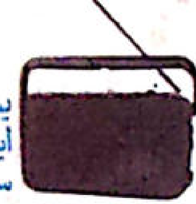
### Read the description. What object is it?

People use this to play games or watch movies. You can use it to find information on the internet. You can also write essays and do your homework on it. You can't photocopy paper with it.

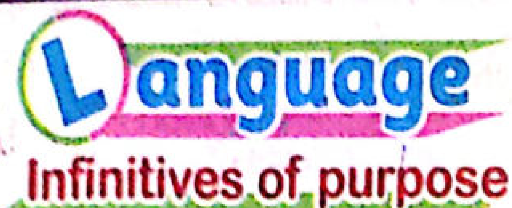


يستخدم الناس هذا لممارسة الألعاب أو مشاهدة الأفلام. يمكنك استخدامه للعثور على المعلومات على شبكة الإنترنت. يمكنك أيضًا كتابة المقالات والقيام بالواجبات المنزلية عليه. لا يمكنك تصوير الورق به.

People use this to listen to music or songs. You can use it to listen to the news. You can also use it to listen to comments on football matches and other sports. You can use headphones with it.



يستخدم الناس هذا للاستماع إلى الموسيقى أو الأغاني. يمكنك استخدامه للاستماع إلى الأخبار. يمكنك أيضًا استخدامه للاستماع إلى التعليقات على مباريات كرة القدم والرياضات الأخرى. يمكنك استخدام سماعة الرأس معه.



## Infinitives of purpose

(to + inf.) لكي (للتعبير عن الغرض)

- We use to + a verb in the base form to explain why we do something.

" المصدر + to " لكي نوضح لماذا نفعل الشيء.

e.g. We wear gloves to protect our hands.

- We use also to + base form verb to answer questions with why.

نستخدم أيضًا " المصدر + to " لكي نجيب على الأسئلة التي تبدأ بـ "Why".

e.g. Why do you wear gloves on a beach clean-up? To protect my hands.

### 1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I bought a card to ............................................(sent) to my grandma
2. Nesma wears sunglasses to ..............................(protecting) her eyes.
3. My uncle went to Cairo to ..............................(visiting) a friend.
4. Mom is using an app to ..............................(learns) French.
5. Rahma listens to music to ..............................(helped) her relax.
6. Lama painted a picture to ..............................(putting) in the exhibition.
7. They make lemonade to ..............................(sells) in the market.
8. Farah traveled by bus to ..............................(saw) her cousins.
9. We bought some candy to ..............................(eats) during the movie.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We use the paintings to .............................. the rooms look nicer.
   a) make b) makes c) made d) making
2. I went to the club .............................. play games.
   a) in b) to c) at d) on
3. Heba wears jewelry to .............................. good.
   a) looks b) looked c) look d) looking



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We're doing a wildlife .................................................... at school.
   a) test b) quiz c) project d) essay
2. My teacher installed two nature .......................................... in the forest.
   a) mobiles b) cameras c) laptops d) computers
3. We're using them to ................................................ wildlife.
   a) film b) paint c) draw d) color
4. He put one on the ground to film animals at .................................. .
   a) height b) noon c) night d) midnight

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. When we do a beach clean- ....... , we wear gloves to protect our hands.
   a) down b) up c) after d) before
2. We use a ............................................ to pick up the trash.
   a) nature camera b) grabber c) multi-grip d) camera
3. The grabber is a long ............................................ stick.
   a) water b) silk c) metal d) paper
4. You can use the grabber when you squeeze the ........................ .
   a) candle b) handle c) sand d) land
5. I volunteer at a ...................................... center for old people.
   a) second b) time c) while d) day
6. They use a ............................................ to take off the tops.
   a) grabber b) nature camera c) multi-grip d) laptop
7. My teacher ................................ two nature cameras in the forest.
   a) told b) called c) sold d) installed
8. A ........................... is something you press to make something happen.
   a) controller b) button c) joystick d) photocopier
9. A ............... is something you can move in different directions to control a computer game.
   a) camera b) speaker c) joystick d) laptop
10. A ............................... is something we use to play a computer game.
    a) scooter b) radio c) headphone d) controller .

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

top - multi-grip - strong - weak - open

I volunteer at a day center for old people. Some old people can't 1) .................. glass bottles and jars. Their hands aren't 2) .................. enough So they use a 3) .................. to take off the tops. They hold the jar with one hand and put the multi-grip on the 4) .................. to take it off.

## 4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

We're doing a wildlife project at school, and my teacher installed two of these in the forest. We're using them to film wildlife. He put one on the ground to film animals at night. He put the other in a tree to film birds during the day. Then we record how many animals and birds we see, and what they're doing. It's so interesting. We've learned a lot!

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. We're doing a .................................................. project at school
   a) science b) geography c) wildlife d) industry
2. My teacher .................................................. two nature cameras in the forest
   a) took b) gave c) marked d) installed
3. He put a camera on the .................................................. to film animals at night.
   a) branch b) plant c) ground d) tree

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. Where did the teacher put the other camera? ..................................................
5. What did they record? ..................................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. water - under - You - swim - to - this - use - .

..................................................

2. ears - your - over - It's - goes - that - the part - .

..................................................

3. Lama - put - painted - to - a picture - the exhibition - in - .

..................................................





Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4. lemonade - to - the market - in - They - sell - make - .

..........................................................................

5. by bus - her cousins - see - Farah - to - traveled - .

..........................................................................

6. some candy - bought - the movie - to - We - during - eat - .

..........................................................................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. A pen is used to .................................... (writing) with.
2. Cameras are used .................................... (for) take pictures.
3. You press the button to .................................... (made) something happen.
4. We wear gloves to .................................... (protecting) our hands.
5. We start a vegetable garden .......... (grows) fresh fruits and vegetables.
6. They use a multi-grip to .................................... (took) off the tor s.
7. I bought a card to .................................... (sending) to my gran ma.
8. I went to the sports center to .................................... (played) volleyball.
9. He put the camera on the ground to .................... (filming) animals at night.
10. I opened the fridge to .................................... (taking) a bottle of water.
11. You open and close the fingers .................................... (at) pick up the trash.

## 7 Punctuate the following.

- do you want to play a game with me

..........................................................................

- the home button takes you to the menu

..........................................................................

## 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

**A photocopier**

**Guiding elements:**

- What is it?
- What do people use it for?

..........................................................................

..........................................................................

..........................................................................

# Lesson (3) Part (A) IT'S GOOD TO GIVE BACK TO THE COMMUNITY

## Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| socialize | يتواصل اجتماعيًا / يختلط | confidence | ثقة |
| fundraising | جمع تبرعات | give back | يرد الجميل |

## Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| healthy eating | أكل صحي | summer school | مدرسة صيفية |
| charity | مؤسسة خيرية | teenagers | مراهقين |

## Definitions تعريفات

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| socialize | spend time with people in a friendly way | يختلط / يتواصل اجتماعيًا |
| confidence | feeling sure about your abilities | ثقة |
| fundraising | collecting money for a charity | جمع تبرعات |
| give back | to help others because you have received so much | يرد الجميل |

**Rawan**

You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to **socialize** and talk to people you wouldn't usually meet. Volunteering also gives you **confidence**. It's amazing to see how teenagers grow in confidence when they start volunteering. **Fundraising** helps charities get the money they need. It's good to **give back** to the place where you live. My advice to teenagers is volunteer and help if you can. You'll enjoy it!




أنت تتعلم العديد من المهارات الحياتية المهمة عندما تتطوع. تتعلم كيفية التواصل الاجتماعي والتحدث مع الأشخاص الذين لا تقابلهم عادةً. كما يمنحك العمل التطوعي الثقة. إنه لأمر مدهش أن نرى كيف تنمو ثقة المراهقين عندما يبدأون العمل التطوعي. يساعد جمع التبرعات المؤسسات الخيرية في الحصول على الأموال التي تحتاجها. من الجيد أن ترد الجميل للمكان الذي تعيش فيه. نصيحتي للمراهقين هي التطوع والمساعدة إذا استطعتم. سوف تستمتعون بذلك!



Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



## Adverbs

الأحوال / الظروف

❶ **An Adverb is a word that describes a verb.** الحال / الظرف هو كلمة تصف فعل.

**e.g.** He waited patiently. - They walked quickly.

### Form

❷ **We can make adverbs by adding -ly to most adjectives.**

يتكون الحال / الظرف بإضافة " ly " إلى معظم الصفات.

quick → quickly slow → slowly

**- Adjectives that end in a constant followed by y, add -ily.**

الصفات التي تنتهي بساكن وبعده "y" نحول "y" إلى "ily".

happy → happily angry → angrily

| Adjective | | Adverb | | Adjective | | Adverb | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| beautiful | جميل | beautifully | بجمال | angry | غضبان | angrily | بغضب |
| quiet | هادئ | quietly | بهدوء | happy | سعيد | happily | بسعادة |
| kind | عطوف | kindly | بعطف | patient | صبور | patiently | بصبر |

❸ **Adverb normally comes after the verb.** الحال يأتي بعد الفعل.

**e.g.** He shouted angrily.

❹ **Adverbs can come before or after a verb and its object. The adverb can't come between the verb and its object.**

يمكن أن تأتي الأحوال قبل أو بعد فعل ومفعوله. ولا يمكن أن تأتي بين الفعل ومفعوله.

**e.g.** She quickly learned the rules. (✓) - She learned quickly the rules. (✗)

She learned the rules quickly. (✓)

❺ **Some adverbs are irregular.** بعض الأحوال غير منتظمة.

| Adjective | | Adverb | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **good** | جيد | **well** | بطريقة جيدة |
| **fast** | سريع | **fast** | بسرعة |
| **hard** | صعب / شاق | **hard** | بجد |

**e.g.** He is a fast runner. He runs fast

She is good at painting. She draws well





## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. They walked .................................................... .
   a) quick b) quicker c) quickly d) quickest
2. He shouted .................................................... .
   a) angry b) hungrily c) anger d) angrily
3. She .................................................... learned the rules.
   a) quickest b) quick c) quicker d) quickly
4. Anas is a slow boy. He walks .................................................... .
   a) slow b) slowly c) slower d) slowest
5. The man was sad. He talked .................................................... .
   a) sadly b) sad c) happy d) happily

## 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Younis hates playing tennis. He plays ....................................(bad).
2. Dalia came first in the running race. She runs really ......................(fast).
3. Sherif opened the door ................ (quiet) because his little brother was sleeping.
4. Maged's picture of a horse is excellent. He draws very ............. (good).
5. I heard two people shouting ..........................(angry) in the street today.
6. Adam was very hungry, and he ate his meal ........................... (quick).
7. Their cousins donated money ............................ (kind) to our charity.
8. Mr Ibrahim waited ................................(patient) for the train to arrive.
9. Fareeda ...............................(beautiful) plays the piano and the violin.
10. Dalida volunteered ......................(happy) at the children's day center.
11. The lion hunted the deer ...................................... (quick) and ate it.
12. The teacher explained the lesson ........................................ (good).
13. The librarian gave me a book to read ..................................... (silent).
14. The children talked ....................................... (angry) to each other.
15. The sky was dark. It rained .............................................. (heavy).



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Rawan started .................................................. when she was 10 years old.
   a) swimming  b) reading  c) volunteering  d) cycling
2. She helps children learn .................................................................................
   a) speaking  b) writing  c) listening  d) reading
3. She likes helping children because they're the ...........................................
   a) future  b) past  c) present  d) tense
4. Her advice for teenagers is be .............................................................................
   a) important  b) lazy  c) bored  d) patient

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Safia likes ............................................................ . It gives her confidence.
   a) eating  b) football  c) volunteering  d) watching TV
2. " ................................ " means to spend time with people in a friendly way .
   a) Socialize  b) Visualize  c) Analyze  d) Volunteering
3. " ........................................................ " means feeling sure about your abilities.
   a) Charity  b) Socialize  c) Teenagers  d) Confidence
4. ........................................................... helps charities get the money they need.
   a) Fundraising  b) Volunteering  c) Playing  d) Confidence
5. " .............. " means to help others because you have received so much.
   a) Fundraising  b) Confidence  c) Give back  d) Socialize

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

give back - Fundraising - amazing - confidence - socialize

You learn life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to 1) .......... and talk to people. It gives you 2) ................ when you start volunteering. 3) .................... helps charities get the money they need. It's good to 4) ........................ to the place where you live.



## 4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to socialize and talk to people you wouldn't usually meet. Volunteering also gives you confidence. It's amazing to see how teenagers grow in confidence when they start volunteering. Fundraising helps charities get the money they need. It's good to give back to the place where you live. My advice to teenagers is volunteer and help if you can. You'll enjoy it!

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. When you volunteer, you learn many ................................................ .
   a) **sports** b) **life skills** c) **charities** d) **ideas**
2. Volunteering also gives you ................................................ .
   a) **confidence** b) **horror** c) **fear** d) **cheat**
3. Fundraising helps charities get the ................................ they need.
   a) **advice** b) **money** c) **air** d) **smoke**

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. What does the writer advise teenagers to do? ................................
5. What is the main idea of the text? ................................................

## 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. They lost the match because they played ................................ (bad).
2. You must cross the street ................................................ (careful).
3. My brother can play football very ........................................ (good).
4. Ali shouted ................................................ (angry) at his sister.
5. Omar can run ................................................ (fastly). He always wins.

## 6 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. children - helping - Why - like - Seif - does - ?

................................................................................................

2. money - they - need - Fundraising - the - get - helps - charities - .

................................................................................................



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

# Lesson (3) Part (B)

# READING

## Key Vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| reward | مكافأة | jealous | غيور | sparrow | عصفور |
| seed | بذرة | thick | سميك | rich | غني |
| village | قرية | huge | ضخم | disappear | يختفي |
| reach | يصل | wing | جناح | care for | يهتم بـ |

## Definitions

تعريفات

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **jealous** | feeling unhappy because someone has what you want | غيور |
| **reward** | something you get for doing a good job or being helpful | مكافأة |

## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

### Two Brothers, Two Rewards

Once, there were two brothers who were very different. The older brother was the richest man in the village. He was rich, but he always wanted more money. The younger brother wasn't rich, but he was kind and shared what he had with his friends.

ذات مرة، كان هناك شقيقان مختلفان تمامًا. كان الأخ الأكبر أغنى رجل في القرية. لقد كان ثريًا، لكنه كان دائمًا يريد المزيد من المال. لم يكن الأخ الأصغر ثريًا، لكنه كان لطيفًا ويشارك ما كان لديه مع أصدقائه.

One day, the younger brother found a bird with a broken wing. "Don't worry, little bird," he said. "I will look after you." He cared for the bird all winter, and when the bird was strong again, he said, "You can fly away now." "First, I want to give you a **reward**," said the bird. "Plant this seed in your garden and look after it like you looked after me."

في أحد الأيام، وجد الأخ الأصغر طائرًا جناحه مكسور. قال: "لا تقلق أيها الطائر الصغير سوف أعتني بك." لقد اعتنى بالطائر طوال فصل الشتاء، وعندما أصبح الطائر قويًا مرة أخرى، قال: "يمكنك الطيران بعيدًا الآن". قال الطائر: "أولاً، أريد أن أعطيك مكافأة ازرع هذه البذرة في حديقتك واعتني بها كما اعتنيت بي."

The brother planted the seed and watched it grow into a huge plant with big, orange vegetables. When the brother cut one open, it was full of gold and silver! He was now the richest man in the village!

زرع الأخ البذرة وشاهدها وهي تنمو لتصبح نباتًا ضخمًا يحتوي على خضروات ضخمة برتقالية اللون. وعندما فتح الأخ واحدة، كانت مليئة بالذهب والفضة! والآن أصبح أغنى رجل في القرية!

The older brother was **jealous**. He went to his brother's house, and his brother told him about the bird. The next day, the older brother caught a **sparrow** and broke its wing. He said, "I'll look after you, then you can give me a reward." He looked after the bird, and when it was strong, he said, "Now I want my reward." The little bird replied, "Here is your reward. Plant this seed and look after it well."

كان الأخ الأكبر غيورًا. ذهب إلى بيت أخيه، فأخبره أخوه عن الطائر. في اليوم التالي، أمسك الأخ الأكبر بعصفور وكسر جناحه. وقال له: "سأعتني بك، ثم يمكنك أن تعطيني مكافأة". اعتنى بالطائر، وعندما أصبح قوياً، قال: "الآن أريد مكافأتي". أجاب الطائر الصغير: "هذه هي مكافأتك. ازرع هذه البذرة واعتنِ بها جيدًا."

The older brother planted the seed, and soon a thick, tall plant grew up and up to the moon. The brother climbed up the plant to look for his reward. But when he reached the moon, the plant disappeared. He was alone, and he couldn't go back.

زرع الأخ الأكبر البذرة، وسرعان ما نما نبات طويل وسميك ووصل إلى القمر. تسلق الأخ النبات ليبحث عن مكافأته. ولكن عندما وصل إلى القمر اختفى النبات. لقد كان وحيدًا، ولم يتمكن من العودة.

The older brother didn't find any gold. So now, he looks down from the Moon, and watches his kind, younger brother living happily and helping others.

لم يجد الأخ الأكبر أي ذهب. والآن، ينظر للأسفل من القمر، ويشاهد أخاه الطيب الأصغر يعيش بسعادة ويساعد الآخرين.



## Read again and write T (True) or F (False).

1. The younger brother was kind to his friends, but he wasn't rich. ( )
2. The younger brother found an injured mouse and looked after it. ( )
3. The older brother was jealous when his brother became rich. ( )
4. The older brother looked after an injured bird because he loved it. ( )
5. The older brother found his reward on the Moon and shared it with his brother. ( )



Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

# Lesson (3) Part (C)

# PRONUNCIATION

## Look, listen and repeat. انظر، استمع وردد.

### ch, sh and tch sounds








| rich غني | chop يقطع | fish سمكة | shoe فردة حذاء | watch يشاهد | catch يمسك |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|

| sh /ʃ/ | | |
|---|---|---|
| ship سفينة | sheep خروف / غنم | wash يغسل |
| shirt قميص | shop محل / يتسوق | cash نقد |
| shells أصداف | dishes أطباق | |

| ch /tʃ/ | | |
|---|---|---|
| chip رقاقة | lunch غذاء | reach يصل |
| chicken دجاجة | teacher معلم / معلمة | |

| tch /tʃ/ | | |
|---|---|---|
| kitchen مطبخ | catch يمسك | watch يشاهد |



## Complete the words with sh, ch, or tch.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| __ eep | ca __ | wa __ | lun __ |
| __op | di __ es | wa __ | fi __ |
| tea __er | __ op | ki __ en | rea __ |

# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The older brother ........................................ a seed.
   a) dug  b) brought  c) planted  d) saw
2. The brother climbed ........................................ the plant.
   a) down  b) up  c) in  d) on
3. When he reached the ........................................, the plant disappeared.
   a) moon  b) sun  c) star  d) sky
4. He was alone, and he couldn't ........................................ back.
   a) swim  b) run  c) go  d) fly

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. They younger brother was kind to his ........................................ .
   a) books  b) friends  c) plants  d) bags
2. .............. means feeling unhappy because someone has what you want.
   a) Sparrow  b) Jealous  c) Reward  d) Award
3. The older brother caught a ........................................ and broke its wing.
   a) cow  b) fox  c) sparrow  d) dog
4. "........ " means something you get for doing a good job or being helpful.
   a) Award  b) Quiz  c) Test  d) Reward

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**reward - present - away - after - broken**

One day, the younger brother found a bird with a 1) .................... wing. "Don't worry, little bird, " he said. " I will look 2) .................... you." He cared for the bird all winter, and when the bird was strong again, he said, " You can fly 3) .................... now." "First, I want to give you a 4) ....................." said the bird. "Plant this seed in your garden and look after it like you looked after me."



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## Lesson (3)



### 4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

One day, a younger farmer found a bird with a broken wing. "Don't worry, little bird," he said. "I will look after you." He cared for the bird all <u>winter</u>, and when the bird was strong again, he said, "You can fly away now." "First, I want to give you a reward," said the bird. "Plant this seed in your garden and look after it like you looked after me." The farmer planted the seed and watched it grow into a **<u>huge</u>** plant with big, orange vegetables. When he cut one open, it was full of gold and silver! He was now the richest man in the village!

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The bird had a broken ................................................ .
   a) **beak** b) **wing** c) **leg** d) **bone**
2. The underlined word "winter" is a ........................................ .
   a) **season** b) **subject** c) **month** d) **sport**
3. The word "huge" means very ........................................ .
   a) **small** b) **short** c) **little** d) **big**

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. What do you think of the farmer?

..........................................................................................................

5. What was one of the orange vegetables full of?

..........................................................................................................

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. brother - his - of - jealous - brother - <u>The older</u> - is - younger - .

..........................................................................................................

2. the bird - <u>What</u> - give - did - the - brother - younger - ?

..........................................................................................................

### 6 Punctuate the following.

- he was rich but wanted more money

..........................................................................................................

- what did he do to the bird

..........................................................................................................

# Lessons (4 & 5) WRITING: A BIOGRAPHY PROJECT

## Vocabulary الكلمات

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| biography | سيرة ذاتية يكتبها شخص عن آخر | leader | قائد |
| youth | الشباب | award | يمنح جائزة |
| preparatory school | الدراسة الإعدادية | fundraiser | جامع تبرعات |
| university | جامعة | citizen | مواطن |
| social science | العلوم الأجتماعية | waste | فضلات |
| playground | ملعب | draft | مسودة |
| shopping | تسوق | timeline | خط زمني |
| event | حدث | leaflet | منشور / نشرة / مطوية |
| food boxes | صناديق طعام | headings | عناوين رئيسية |
| fundraising | جمع تبرعات | local | محلي |
| successful | ناجح | neighbor | جار |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Present | | Past | P.P |
|---|---|---|---|
| organize | ينظم | organized | organized |
| deliver | يُوصل | delivered | delivered |
| raise | يجمع | raised | raised |
| improve | يُحسن | improved | improved |
| offer | يعرض | offered | offered |
| reduce | يقلل | reduced | reduced |
| recycle | يعيد تدوير | recycled | recycled |
| participate | يُشارك | participated | participated |
| lead | يقود | led | led |
| win | يفوز | won | won |
| run | يجري / يُدير | ran | run |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Youth Give Back | الشباب يرد الجميل | beach clean-up | تنظيف الشاطئ |
| run a charity | يدير جمعية خيرية | a good citizen | مواطن صالح |



Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



### Fareeda Hassan: A Biography

فريدة حسن: سيرة ذاتية

#### Early Life

مرحلة مبكرة من الحياة

Fareeda Hassan was born in Alexandria in 1994. As a child, Fareeda helped her mom buy her elder neighbors' shopping.

ولدت فريدة حسن في الإسكندرية عام ١٩٩٤. عندما كانت طفلة، ساعدت فريدة والدتها في شراء مشتريات جيرانها الأكبر سناً.

#### Volunteering at School

العمل التطوعي في المدرسة

Fareeda started preparatory school in 2006. Here, she participated in her first volunteer event. She and a team of volunteers did a beach clean-up. In 2010, she organized her first charity event delivering food boxes to families in the community.

بدأت فريدة الدراسة للمرحلة الإعدادية في عام ٢٠٠٦. وشاركت وقتها في أول حدث تطوعي لها. قامت هي وفريق من المتطوعين بتنظيف الشاطئ. في عام ٢٠١٠، نظمت أول حدث خيري لها لتوصيل صناديق الطعام للعائلات في المجتمع.

#### The University Years

سنوات الجامعة

In 2012, Fareeda went to university to study social sciences. Here, she organized a fundraising event to raise money for a new playground.

في عام ٢٠١٢، ذهبت فريدة إلى الجامعة لدراسة العلوم الاجتماعية. وقتها قامت بتنظيم حدث لجمع التبرعات من أجل ملعب جديد.

#### Working in Charities

العمل في الجمعيات الخيرية

In 2017, Fareeda started her first job as a community volunteer leader in Cairo. Since then, she has helped many people. In 2020, she led a "Youth Give Back" project in six cities in Egypt. It was so successful that she won the "2020 Community Worker" award. Today, she runs a charity for children.

في عام ٢٠١٧، بدأت فريدة وظيفتها الأولى كقائدة مجتمعية متطوعة في القاهرة. ومنذ ذلك الحين، ساعدت الكثير من الناس. وفي عام ٢٠٢٠، قادت مشروع "الشباب يرد الجميل" في ست مدن في مصر. لقد كان ناجحًا جدًا لدرجة أنها فازت بجائزة "العامل المجتمعي لعام ٢٠٢٠". واليوم تدير مؤسسة خيرية للأطفال.

## Read the biography again and answer the questions:

1. How did Fareeda help her neighbors when she was a child? ..................
2. What was her first volunteer event at preparatory school? ..................
3. What did she study at university? ..................
4. What award did she win? ..................

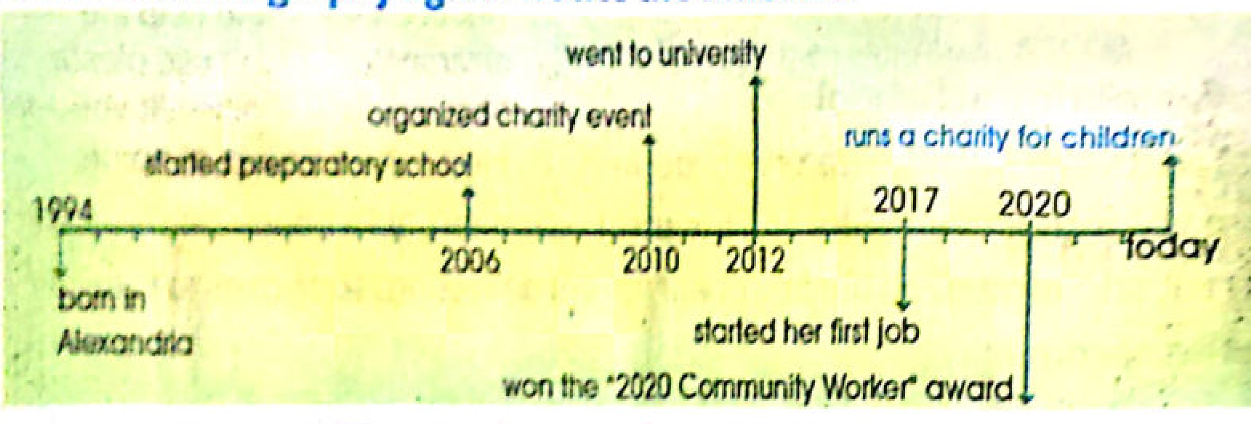


## Tip!

When writing a biography, it helps to make a timeline of events, starting from the date of birth. Add important events and their dates to the timeline. This helps you organize the information in the correct order.

عند كتابة سيرة ذاتية من المفيد أن تعمل جدول زمني للأحداث، يبدأ من تاريخ الميلاد. أضف الأحداث المهمة وتواريخها إلى الجدول الزمني. وهذا يساعدك على تنظيم المعلومات بالترتيب الصحيح.

### Read the biography again. Notice the timeline.




### Plan a biography for "Fares Shawky". Create a timeline using the information blow.

- 1996 born in Cairo
- 2008 started preparatory school
- 2008 volunteered in charity car wash
- 2014 went to university
- 2022 first job as a charity fundraiser
- Today runs a children's charity in Luxor

**Fares Shawky** : A Biography

**Early life** :

..............................................................................

..............................................................................

**Volunteering** :

..............................................................................

..............................................................................

**The University Years** :

..............................................................................

..............................................................................

**Working in charities** :

..............................................................................

..............................................................................



Help your child write a biography.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب سيرة ذاتية.




## Read the leaflet. How can you reduce waste?

# Ways to Be a Good Citizen

*There are lots of ways you can volunteer to help your community.*

هناك الكثير من الطرق التي يمكنك من خلالها التطوع لمساعدة مجتمعك.



**Respect Others:** Be polite and kind to your neighbors. Help people who are old or sick. Call your neighbors to ask how you can help. You can offer to do their shopping or do jobs for them at home.

احترام الآخرين: كن مهذبًا ولطيفًا مع جيرانك. ساعد الأشخاص المسنين أو المرضى. اتصل بجيرانك واسألهم كيف يمكنك المساعدة. يمكنك أن تعرض عليهم القيام بالتسوق أو القيام بأعمال لهم في المنزل.



**Help the Community:** Volunteer at a local charity event or help out on a community project. Volunteering isn't boring. It's interesting. You'll be surprised how much you enjoy it.

مساعدة المجتمع: تطوع في حدث خيري محلي أو ساعد في مشروع مجتمعي. العمل التطوعي ليس مملاً. إنه شيق. سوف تندهش بمدى استمتاعك به.

**Protect the Environment:** Reduce waste and help the environment. Don't use plastic bags or plastic bottles. If you have plastic bottles at home, recycle them.
Let's all be good citizens and make the world a better place!

حماية البيئة: قلل المخلفات وساعد البيئة. لا تستخدم أكياس بلاستيكية أو زجاجات بلاستيكية. إن كان لديك زجاجات بلاستيكية في المنزل، قم بإعادة تدويرها. لنكن جميعًا مواطنين صالحين ونجعل العالم مكانًا أفضل!





## Read again and answer.

1. What could you do for your neighbors?

.................................................................................................

2. What ways could you volunteer in your community?

.................................................................................................

3. What could you do to help the environment?

.................................................................................................

Help your child make a leaflet.

ساعد طفلك أن يقوم بعمل منشور

# General Activities



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Fareeda started .................................................... school in 2006.
   a) primary b) preparatory c) secondary d) university
2. She participated in her first volunteer ....................................................
   a) hint b) tent c) event d) competition
3. She did a beach clean ....................................................
   a) down b) on c) at d) up
4. In 2010, she organized her first .................................................... event.
   a) helping b) calling c) charity d) planting

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Be polite and .................................................... to your neighbors.
   a) cruel b) bad c) kind d) hard
2. .................................................... waste and help the environment.
   a) Increase b) Reduce c) Hire d) Bring
3. Volunteering isn't ....................................................
   a) good b) interesting c) boring d) better
4. Let's all be good .................................... and make the world a better place.
   a) players b) citizens c) engineers d) divers

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

successful - led - started - helped - community

In 2017, Fareeda started her first job as a 1) ............... volunteer leader in Cairo. Since then, she has 2) ............... many people. In 2020, she 3) ............... a "Youth Give Back" project in six cities in Egypt. It was so 4) ............... that she won the "2020 Community Worker" award. Today, she runs a charity for children.



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



## 4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

We all live together in a community. We should be good citizens. There are lots of ways, we can volunteer to help our community. We can volunteer at a local charity event or help out on a community project. Volunteering is interesting. We must be polite and kind to our neighbors. We could call neighbors and offer to do their shopping. We must respect the environment. We could reduce waste and recycle plastic bottles. Let's all be good citizens and make the world a better place.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The main idea of the text is about being ..........................................
   a) community b) good citizens c) neighbors d) recycle
2. The word "interesting" is the opposite of ..........................................
   a) exciting b) bored c) boring d) amazing
3. The underlined word "their" refers to ..........................................
   a) neighbors b) citizens c) community d) charities

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. What could we do to help the environment? ..........................................
5. How should you deal with neighbors? ..........................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. started - She - 2007 - preparatory - in - school - .

..........................................

2. environment - the - What - help - to - do - you - could - ?

..........................................

## 6 Punctuate the following.

- help people who are old or sick

..........................................

## 7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

**Ways to be a good citizen**

**Guiding elements:**

- **Respect others.**
- **Help the community.**

..........................................

..........................................

..........................................

# Writing Corner

## Volunteering

Volunteering is a very good way to help our community. It's interesting. At school, we started a project called "Community Help". We had to choose something we could do to support other people or things in our community. Some people planted a vegetable garden in the school to grow fresh fruit and vegetables. Other people volunteered to help clean trash from the river so that animals' habitats are safer.

## A wildlife project

We're doing a wildlife project at school, and my teacher installed two nature cameras in the forest. We're using them to film wildlife. He put one on the ground to film animals at night. He put the other in a tree to film birds during the day. Then we record how many animals and birds we see, and what they're doing. It's so interesting. We've learned a lot!

## Volunteering

You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to socialize and talk to people you wouldn't usually meet. Volunteering also gives you confidence. It's amazing to see how teenagers grow in confidence when they start volunteering. Fundraising helps charities get the money they need. It's good to give back to the place where you like.

## A biography

Fareeda Hassan was born in Alexandria in 1994. As a child, Fareeda helped her mom buy her elder neighbors' shopping. Fareeda started preparatory school in 2006. Here, she participated in her first volunteer event. She and a team of volunteers did a beach clean-up. In 2010, she organized her first charity event delivering food boxes to families in the community. In 2020, she led a "Youth Give Back" project in Egypt. It was so successful that she won the "2020 Community Worker" award.



Help your child write paragraphs.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرات.

# Review on Unit (11)

## Vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| donate | يتبرع | participate | يشارك | support | يساند - يدعم |
| volunteer | يتطوع | help out | يساعد في | start up | يبدأ |
| jealous | غيور | multi-grip | مقبض متعدد الأغراض | install | يركب / يثبت |
| record | يسجل | reward | يكافيء / مكافأة | sparrow | عصفور |
| kind to | عطوف مع | look after | يعتني بـ | day center | مركز رعاية نهاري |
| confidence | ثقة | fundraising | جمع تبرعات | give back | يرد الجميل |
| grabber | أداة التقاط / ماسك | handle | مقبض | film | يُصور |
| socialize | يتواصل اجتماعيًا | nature camera | | | كاميرا لتصوير الطبيعة |

## Pronunciation

| sh /ʃ/ | | ch /tʃ/ | | tch /tʃ/ | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| shoe | فردة حذاء | rich | غني | watch | يشاهد |
| shop | محل | chop | يقطع | catch | يمسك |
| ship | سفينة | chip | رقاقة | kitchen | مطبخ |

## Language

### to + inf.

- تستخدم (to + inf) لبيان الغرض.

We wear gloves to protect our hands.

### Adverbs الظروف

- An Adverb is a word that describes a verb. الحال / الظرف هو كلمة تصف الفعل.

- يتكون الحال بإضافة "ly" إلى الصفة.

quick ⟶ quickly

- They walk quickly.

- هناك بعض الأحوال الشاذة.

good ⟶ well    fast ⟶ fast    hard ⟶ hard

- He runs fast.    - She plays well.

# Dictation on Unit (11)

## Lesson (1)

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| يساند / يدعم | ........................ | يتطوع | ........................ |
| يشارك | ........................ | يساعد في | ........................ |
| يبدأ | ........................ | عطوف مع | ........................ |
| يعتني بـ | ........................ | قمامة | ........................ |

## Lesson (2)

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| مقبض متعدد الأغراض | ........................ | مقبض | ........................ |
| كاميرا لتصوير الطبيعة | ........................ | مركز رعاية نهاري | ........................ |
| ماسك / لاقط | ........................ | زر | ........................ |
| ذراع تحكم | ........................ | جهاز تحكم | ........................ |

## Lesson (3)

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| يتواصل اجتماعيًا | ........................ | ثقة | ........................ |
| جمع تبرعات | ........................ | يرد الجميل | ........................ |
| مكافأة | ........................ | غيور | ........................ |
| عصفور | ........................ | غني | ........................ |
| يشاهد | ........................ | خراف / خروف | ........................ |
| فردة حذاء | ........................ | يقطع | ........................ |
| يمسك | ........................ | مطبخ | ........................ |
| رقاقة | ........................ | سفينة | ........................ |
| يغسل | ........................ | غذاء | ........................ |
| يصل | ........................ | أطباق | ........................ |

## Lessons (4 & 5)

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| يحترم | ........................ | بيئة | ........................ |
| يحمي | ........................ | مشروع | ........................ |
| يساعد | ........................ | يقلل | ........................ |
| مجتمع | ........................ | يعيد تدوير | ........................ |



Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

# Activities on Unit (11)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I love .................................................................................. .
   a) singing   b) dancing   c) reading   d) diving
2. I ........................................................................ in the kindergarten class.
   a) help out   b) cut off   c) look for   d) make out
3. I love reading ............................................. with the younger children.
   a) magazines   b) articles   c) stories   d) leaflets
4. We're starting ........................................................................ a project.
   a) up   b) out   c) down   d) of

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We ........................ to help in the community service project every year.
   a) dismiss   b) volunteer   c) press   d) do
2. I help mom and look ............................................ my little brother.
   a) before   b) down   c) after   d) up
3. Children who ...................... in a group activity usually have lots of fun!
   a) participate   b) look   c) make   d) write
4. If you want to help, ............................................ money to a charity.
   a) ask   b) donate   c) paint   d) draw

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**painted - being - having - sad - hospital**

My little sister was sick last month, and she was in the 1) .................. She's better now, but when we visited her, she was 2) ................ because she didn't like 3) ............... there. I thought it would be nice to do something for children who are sick. My friends and I 4) ................ lots of big pictures of flowers, animals, beaches, and trees.





## 4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

When we do a beach clean-up, we wear gloves to protect our hands. We carry black bags for the trash we collect. And look! We use a grabber to pick up the trash. It's a long metal stick with two fingers at the end. The fingers open and close when you squeeze the handle at the top. You open and close the fingers to pick up the trash, then drop it in the bag. Mom says it's better than picking things up with your hand.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. When we do a beach clean-up we, wear gloves to ................ our hands.
   a) **cut** b) **bleed** c) **protect** d) **spoil**
2. We put the trash in ................................................ bags.
   a) **brown** b) **black** c) **green** d) **yellow**
3. We use a ................................................ to pick up the trash.
   a) **nature camera** b) **grabber** c) **multi-grip** d) **radio**

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. Describe the grabber. ................................................
5. What's your mother's opinion about the grabber? ................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. children - my - in - school - help - to - wanted - I - .
................................................................................
2. to - center - I - to play - volleyball - went - the sports - .
................................................................................
3. grow - wanted - vegetables - to - They - fruit - and - .
................................................................................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. They make lemonade to ................................ (selling) in the market.
2. Safia draws very ................................................ (good).

## 7 Punctuate the following.

- sherif s picture is nice. ................................................

## 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about "Scooter":

**Guiding elements:**

**-What is it?** **- What do people use it for?**



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

# Al-Azhar Corner

## 1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

**character - buttons - menu - do - controller**

Mom : Your new games console looks great. What is this part for?
Amira: That's the 1) .............................. . You use it to play the game.
Mom : What does this 2) .............................................................. ?
Amira: That's the home button. It takes you back to the 3) .................... .
Mom : What are these 4) ............................................................. for?
Amira: For telling your 5) ............................................. to run or jump.

## Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

**went - preparatory - started - university - 1994**

Anas : When was Fareeda Hassan born?
Seif : She was born in 1) ..................................................................
Anas : When did she start 2) ................................................. school?
Saif : She 3) .................................................................. in 2006.
Anas : When did she go to 4) ................................................... ?
Saif : She 5) ................................................ to university in 2012.

## 2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | donate | participate | support | volunteered | (....................) |
| 2. | What | Why | was | Who | (....................) |
| 3. | flowers | beaches | trees | plants | (....................) |
| 4. | kind | start up | help out | look after | (....................) |
| 5. | headphones | scooter | play | radio | (....................) |

## Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | angry | good | quickly | bad | (....................) |
| 2. | angrily | quietly | quickly | slow | (....................) |
| 3. | sheep | fish | shoes | watch | (....................) |
| 4. | lunch | chop | chip | catch | (....................) |
| 5. | camera | radio | news | snorkel | (....................) |

Unit 12

# FICTION READER: ATEMU AND AMETHYST

أتيمو والحمامة أميثست

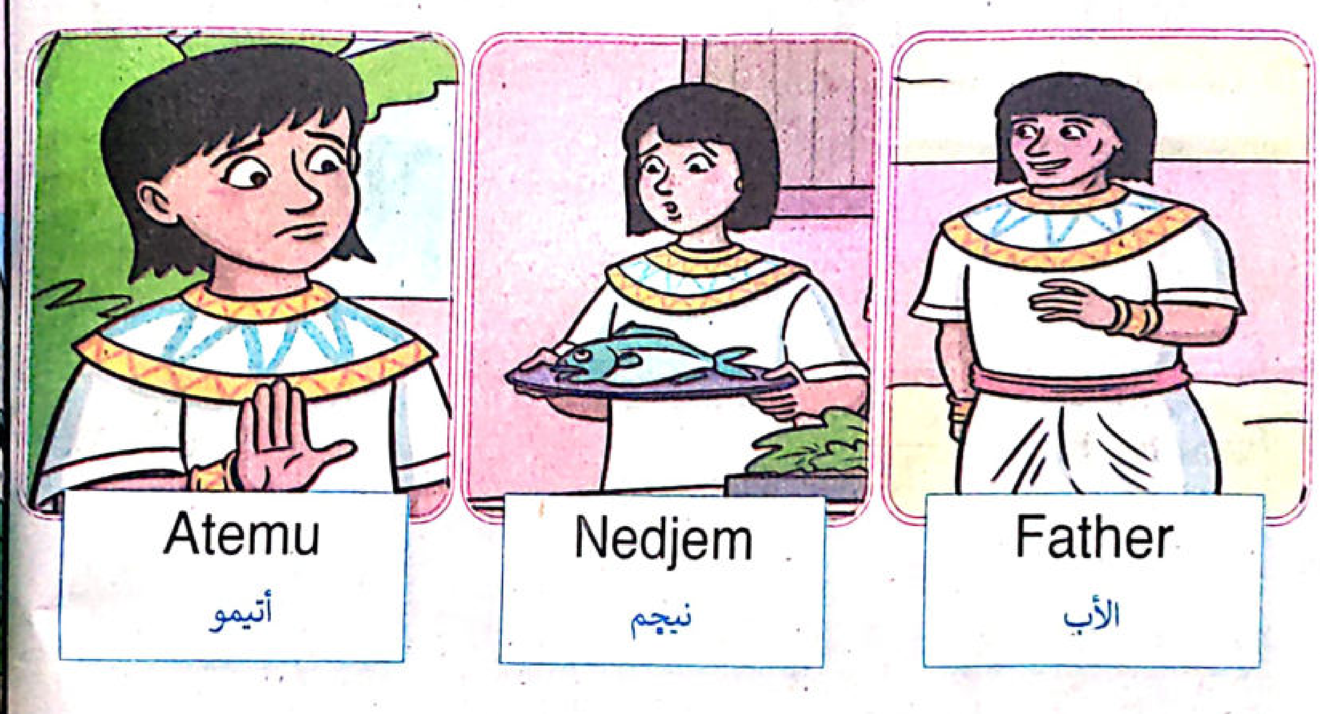


BY JENNY FARMER

ILLUSTRATED BY MATT WARD

# ATEMU AND AMETHYST

## Characters



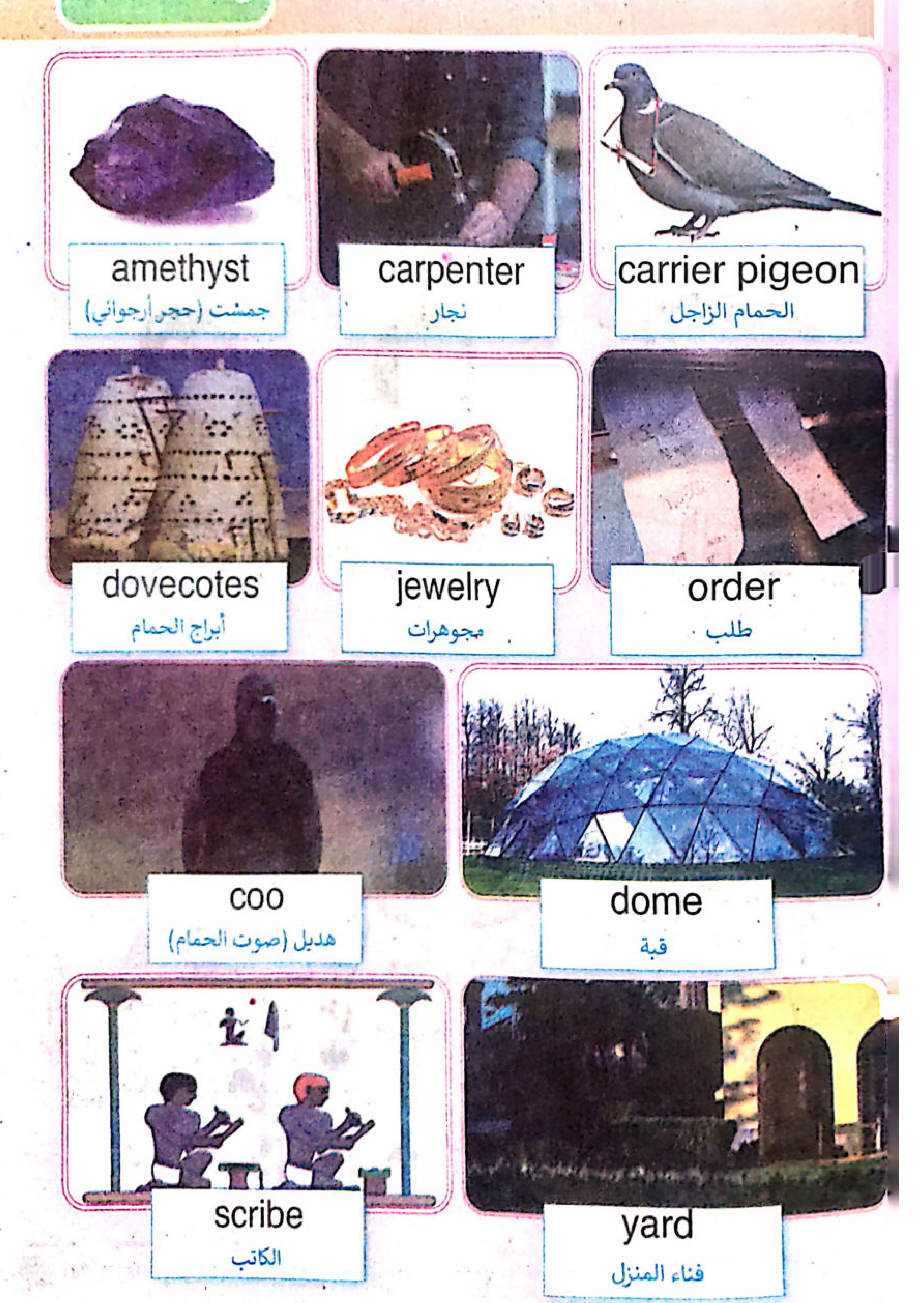




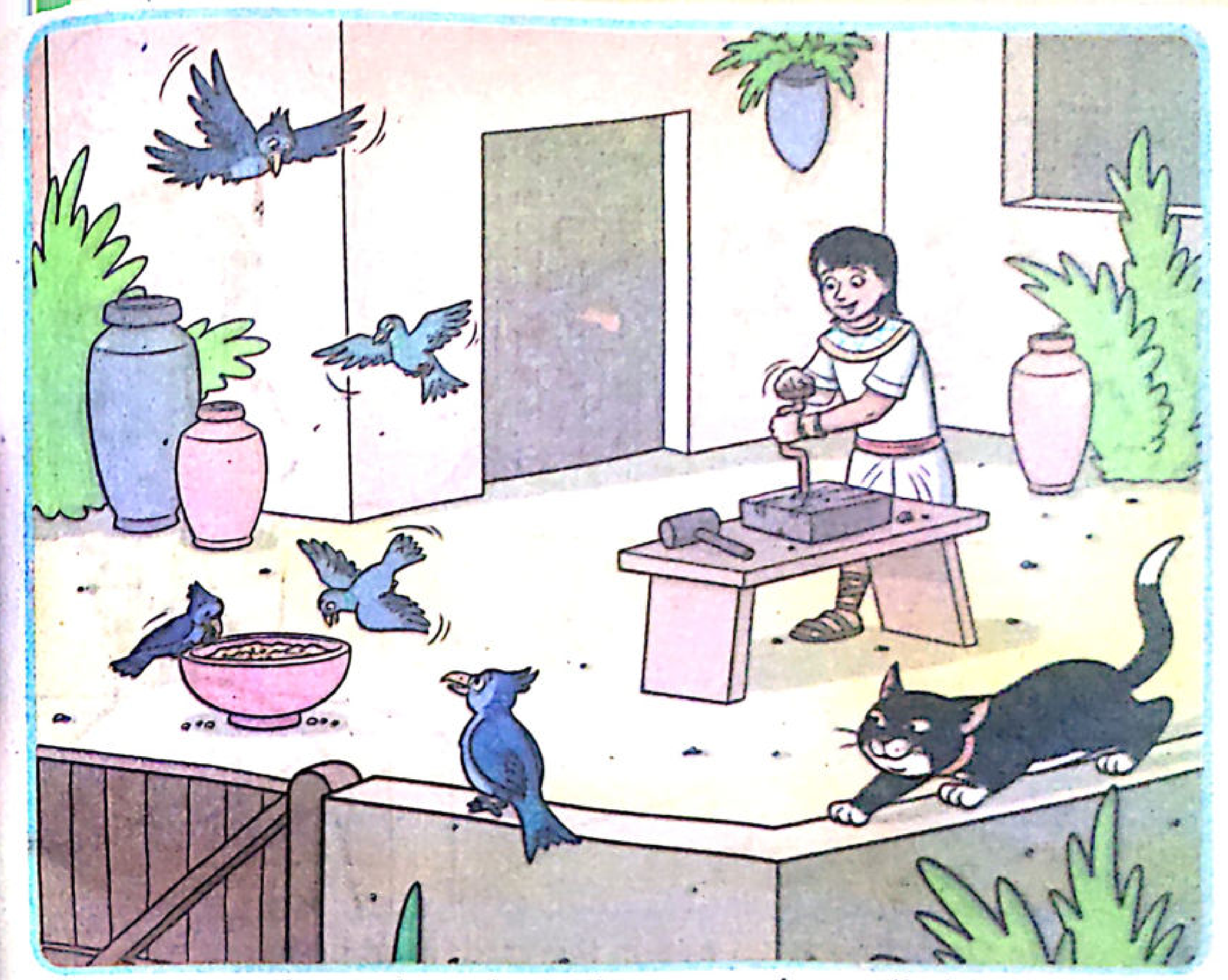
Help your child identify the characters of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على شخصيات القصة.

The Story

# PICTURE DICTIONARY



# Part (1) Beginning

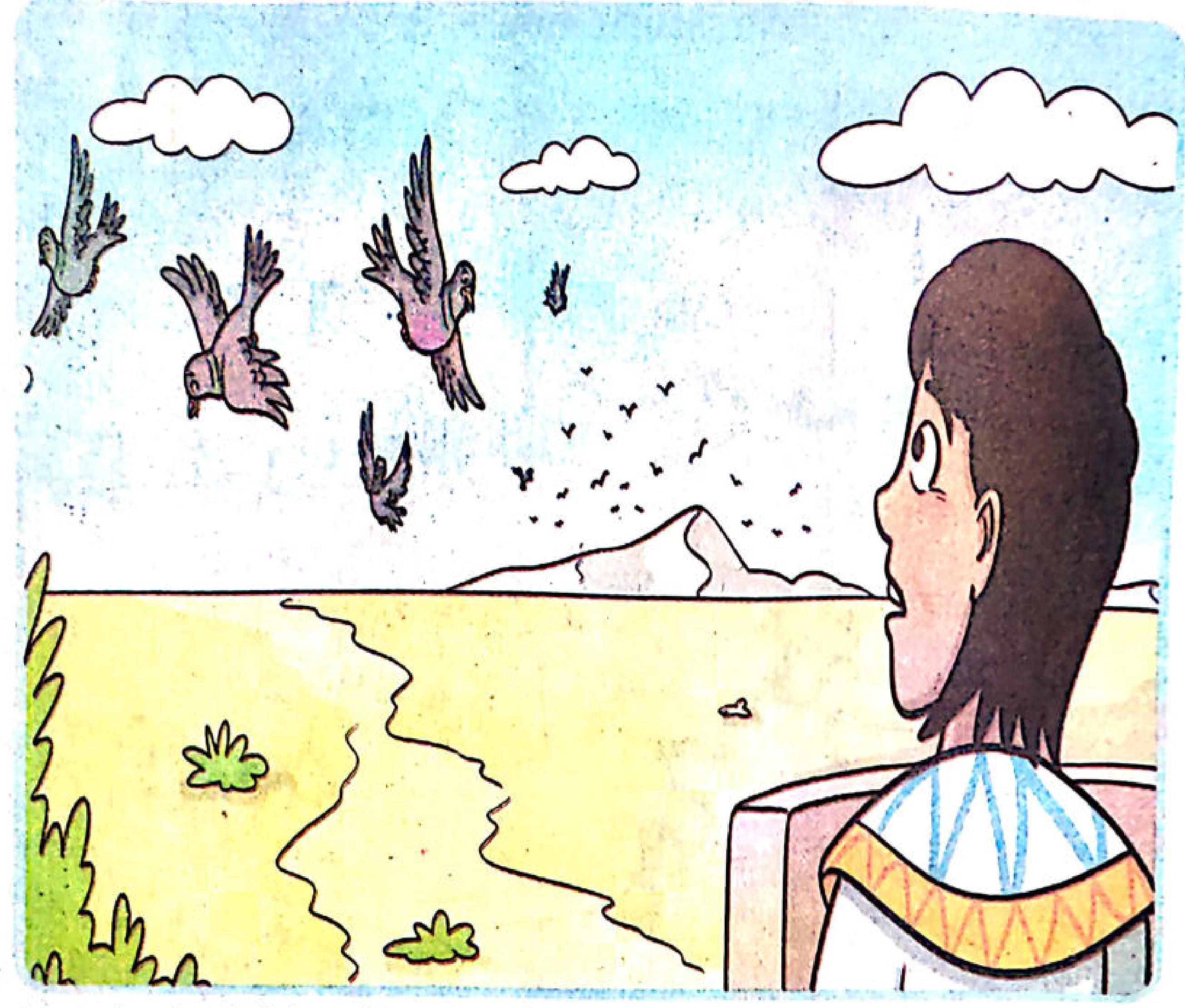


Once upon a time, a long, long, time ago, a boy called Atemu lived in the Nile Delta. His home was in a small village, and he lived with his parents and his big sister, Nedjem. Atemu was twelve, but he didn't go to school. His father worked as a carpenter. He was teaching Atemu how to make things from wood.

Atemu loved animals, especially birds. He liked to watch the birds that came into his yard. Every day, Atemu gave some grain to the birds. He enjoyed watching them eat. Often, his sister's cat came into the yard and watched the birds, too. It sometimes jumped at the birds, but it never caught them. It was a very slow cat.

كان يا ما كان، منذ زمن بعيد، عاش صبي يدعى أتيمو في دلتا النيل. كان منزله في قرية صغيرة، وكان يعيش مع والديه وأخته الكبرى نيجم. كان أتيمو في الثانية عشرة من عمره، لكنه لم يذهب إلى المدرسة. كان والده يعمل نجارا. وكان يعلم أتيمو كيفية صنع الأشياء من الخشب. كان أتيمو يُحب الحيوانات، وخاصة الطيور. كان يحب مشاهدة الطيور التي تأتي إلى فناء منزله. كل يوم، كان أتيمو يعطي بعض الحبوب للطيور. كان يستمتع بمشاهدتهم وهم يأكلون. في كثير من الأحيان، كانت قطة أخته تأتي إلى الفناء وتراقب الطيور أيضًا. وكانت أحيانًا تقفز على الطيور، لكنها لم تمسك بهم أبدًا. لقد كانت قطة بطيئة جدًا.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



One day in October, Atemu was in the yard when he heard a strange noise. He looked up and saw something amazing. A huge **flock** of birds were flying over his village. They were coming down to a field nearby.

"Mom! Mom!" shouted Atemu. "There are so many birds! Can I go and see them?" His Mom came out of the house and looked. "Wow!" she said. "Yes, you can go."

She filled a bowl with grain. "Here you are," she said kindly. "You can take this for them."

في أحد أيام شهر أكتوبر، كان أتيمو في الفناء عندما سمع ضجيجًا غريبًا. نظر للأعلى ورأى شيئاً مذهلاً. كان سرب ضخم من الطيور يحلق فوق قريته. كانوا ينزلون إلى حقل قريب.

صاح أتيمو: "أمي! أمي! هناك الكثير من الطيور! هل يمكنني الذهاب ورؤيتهم؟" خرجت والدته من المنزل ونظرت وقالت "واو! نعم، يمكنك الذهاب."

ملأت وعاءً بالحبوب وقالت بلطف: "تفضل، يمكنك أن تأخذ هذا لهم."



Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



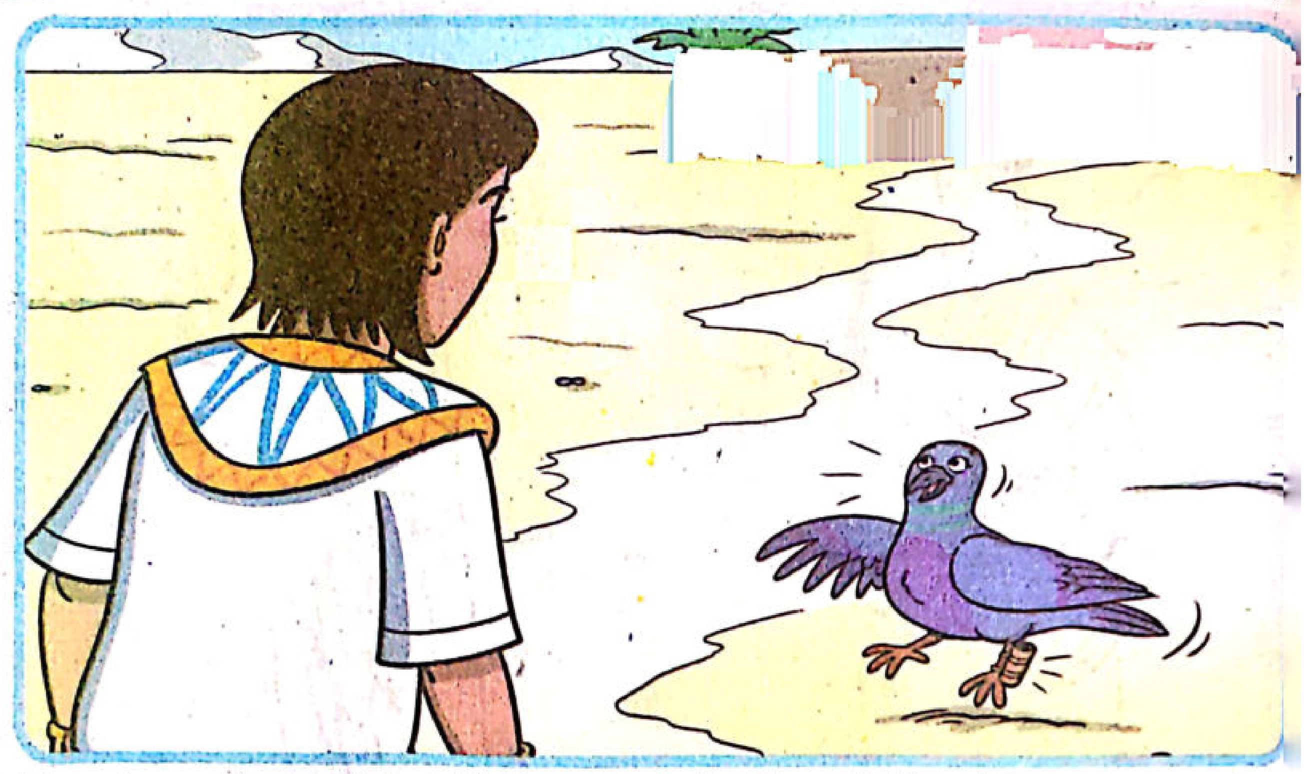
When Atemu got to the fields, he couldn't believe his eyes. There were thousands of birds. Every one of them was light gray, with shiny green feathers on its neck and purple feathers on its chest. They were beautiful! They called to each other with a long "whoo" sounds.

Atemu threw the grain to the birds. They ate it hungrily. Then, suddenly, they flew into the sky again. Atemu watched them go.

عندما وصل أتيمو إلى الحقول، لم يصدق عينيه. كان هناك الآلاف من الطيور. كان لون كل واحد منهم رمادي فاتح، وله ريش أخضر لامع على رقبته وريش أرجواني على صدره. كانت طيورًا جميلة! كانوا ينادون بعضهم البعض بأصوات "whoo" الطويلة. ألقى أتيمو الحبوب للطيور. أكلوها بِنَهَم (بشراهة). ثم فجأة طاروا إلى السماء مرة أخرى. شاهدهم أتيمو وهم يذهبون.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



Then he noticed a bird at his feet. It was looking at him. "Coo, coo, coo, coo," it went.
"I don't have any grain for you, bird," said Atemu.
"Coo, coo, coo, coo," went the bird.
The noise was different from the other birds. It looked different too. First, it was bigger. The other birds had yellow beaks, but this bird's beak was dark gray. This bird also had stripes on its wings. Atemu could see something strange on its leg, too.
Just then, Atemu heard his mother calling him.
Atemu started walking quickly, but he could hear the bird behind him. It was following him!
"Why don't you fly with your friends?" said Atemu, but the bird just cooed.

ثم لاحظ طائرًا عند قدميه. كان ينظر إليه، وكان يصيح باستمرار "كو، كو، كو، كو"
قال أتيمو: "ليس لدي أي حبوب لك أيها الطائر".
صاح الطائر "كو، كو، كو، كو"
كان الصوت مختلفًا عن الطيور الأخرى. بدا الطائر مختلفًا أيضًا. أولًا، كان أكبر حجمًا. كانت الطيور الأخرى مناقيرها صفراء، أما منقار هذا الطائر فكان لونه رمادي داكن. وكان لهذا الطائر أيضًا خطوط على جناحيه. استطاع أتيمو أن يرى شيئًا غريبًا على ساقه أيضًا.
وعندئذ سمع أتيمو والدته تناديه.
بدأ أتيمو بالمشي بسرعة، لكنه كان يسمع الطائر خلفه. لقد كان يتبعه!
قال أتيمو "لماذا لا تطير مع أصدقائك؟" ولكن كان الطائر فقط يهدل.



Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.

# Activities

## 1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Atemu lived in a big town. ( )
2. Nedjem was Atemu's older sister. ( )
3. Atemu was ten years old. ( )
4. Atemu went to school. ( )
5. Atemu's father made things from wood. ( )
6. Atemu had a cat. ( )
7. The birds called to each other with a short "whoo" sound. ( )

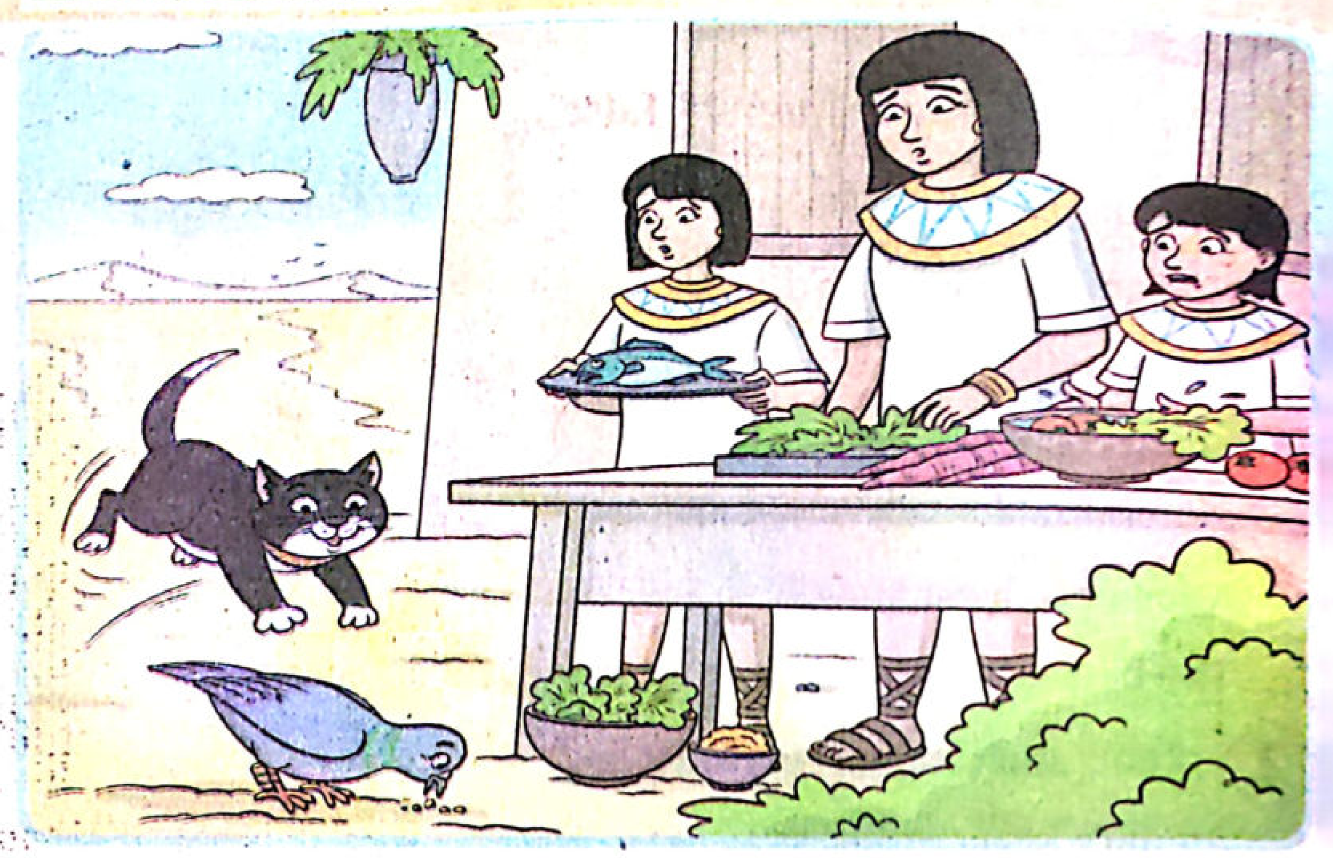
## 2 Read and complete the following.

1. Atemu's father worked as a ..........................................
2. Atemu gave some .......................................... to the birds.
3. A huge .......................................... of birds were flying over his village.
4. All the birds were light .........., with shiny green .......... on their necks.
5. Atemu lived in the ..........................................
6. Atemu's father was teaching him to make things from ..........................................
7. Atemu's mother filled a bowl with ..........................................

## 3 Answer the following questions.

1. What is the story mainly about? ..........................................
2. When and where did the story happen? ..........................................
3. Where did Atemu live? ..........................................
4. How old was Atemu? ..........................................
5. How did the birds call each other? ..........................................
6. What did Atemu throw to the birds? ..........................................
7. What did the bird have on its wings? ..........................................
8. How was the cat? ..........................................

# Part (2) The Middle



When Atemu got to his yard, the bird came in after him. He watched it while he cleaned vegetables for dinner.

Then he saw Nedjem's cat. It was watching the bird, too.

Suddenly, the cat jumped on the bird! But the bird didn't fly away.

Nedjem ran and picked up the cat.

"You should catch rats and snakes, not birds!" she said.

"What's wrong with that bird? It can't fly," said their mother. "Is it hurt?"

"Maybe!" said Atemu. "It didn't fly with the other birds." Atemu walked to the bird.

When he touched its left wing, it made a quiet sound.

"I think its wing is hurt," said Atemu.

عندما وصل أتيمو إلى فناء منزله، دخل الطائر بعده. كان يشاهده بينما كان ينظف الخضار لتناول العشاء.

ثم رأى قطة نيجم. وكانت تراقب الطائر أيضاً.

وفجأةً قفزت القطة على الطائر! لكن الطائر لم يطر بعيدًا.

ركضت نيجم والتقطت القطة.

قالت "يجب أن تصطاد الفئران والثعابين، وليس الطيور!".

قالت والدتهم: "ما مشكلة هذا الطائر؟ لا يمكنه الطيران. هل هو مُصاب؟".

قال أتيمو "ربما! لم يطر مع الطيور الأخرى." مشى أتيمو نحو الطائر.

عندما لمس جناحه الأيسر، أصدر صوتًا هادئًا.

قال أتيمو: "أعتقد أن جناحه مُصاب".



Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



When Atemu's father came home, Atemu showed him the bird. "It has a hurt wing, and there is something on its leg."

"Poor bird!" said his father. "What is that?" He took the object from the bird's leg.

It was a very small wooden box. Atemu's father opened it. A piece of papyrus paper was inside.

"It's a message!" said Atemu's father. "This bird is a **carrier pigeon**."

"What's a carrier pigeon?" asked Atemu.

عندما عاد والد أتيمو إلى المنزل، أراه أتيمو الطائر وقال «إن له جناحًا مُصابًا وهناك شئ ما على ساقه".

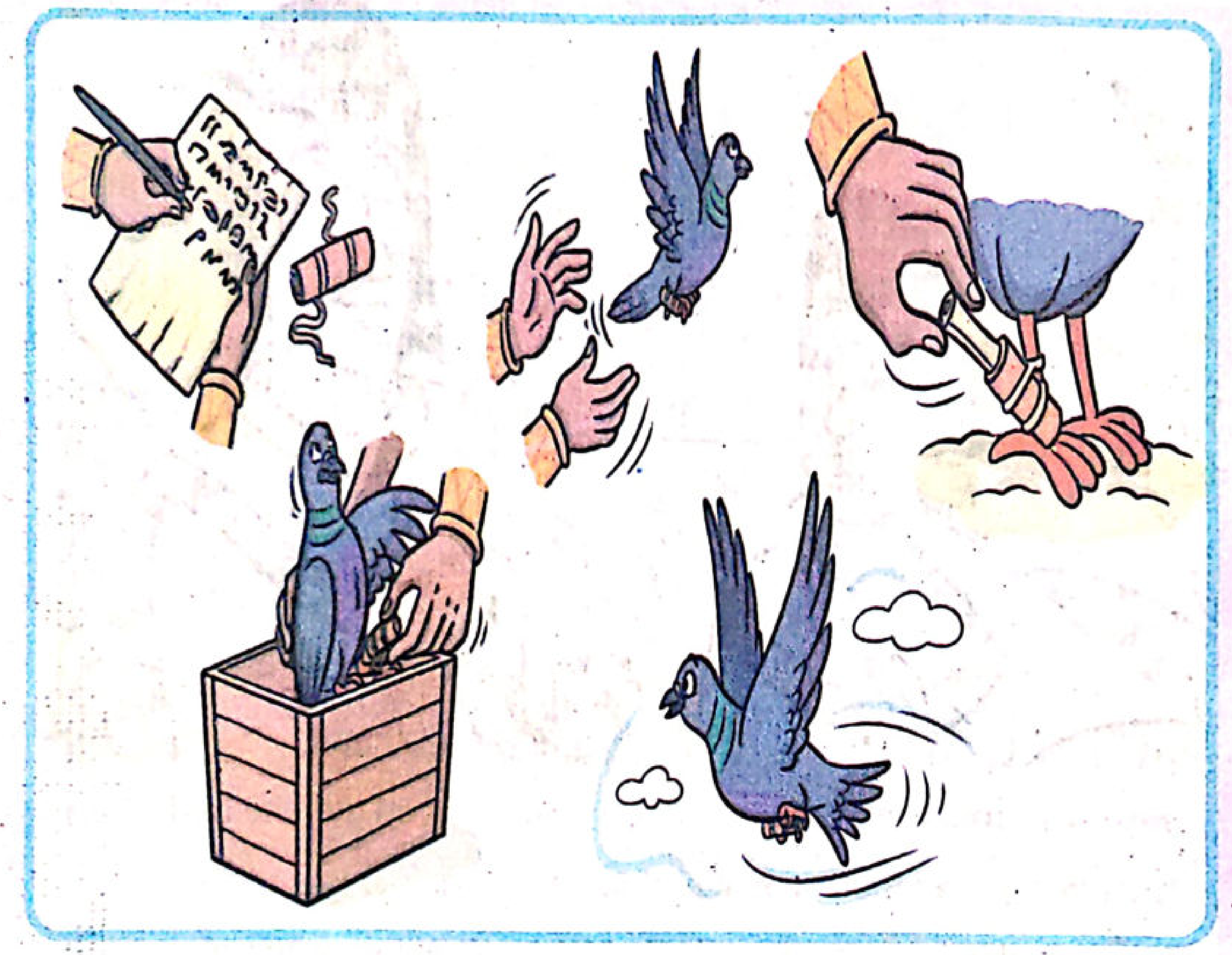
قال والده "طائر مسكين!" "ما هذا؟" و أخذ الشيء من ساق الطائر.

لقد كان صندوقًا خشبيًا صغيرًا جدًا. فتحه والد أتيمو. وكانت هناك قطعة من ورق البردي بداخله.

قال والد أتيمو "إنها رسالة!" "هذا الطائر هو حمامة زاجلة."

سأل أتيمو "ما هو الحمام الزاجل؟"

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



"It's a bird which carries messages," said his father. "Important people in the city keep pigeons. The pigeons learn where they live. Then people take the pigeons to new places. When there is news from that place, they attach the message to the pigeon. It flies home and carries the message. That's why they're called carrier pigeons."
"That's very clever!" said Atemu. "So, what does this message say?"
"I don't know," said his father. "I'll take it to my friend, the scribe."

قال والده: "إنه طائر يحمل الرسائل الأشخاص المهمون في المدينة يربون الحمام. يتعلم الحمام أين يعيشون.
ثم يأخذ الناس الحمام إلى أماكن جديدة. عندما يكون هناك أخبار من ذلك المكان، يعلقون الرسالة على الحمامة.
وتطير إلى المنزل وتحمل الرسالة. ولهذا السبب يطلق عليهم الحمام الزاجل."
قال أتيمو "هذا ذكي جدًا! إذن ماذا تقول هذه الرسالة؟"
قال والده: "لا أعرف سأخذها إلى صديقي الكاتب."



Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



Atemu looked after the pigeon. He made it a high table which the cat couldn't jump onto. He gave it water and grain and talked to it. The pigeon cooed back happily. Atemu's father went to the city. Three days later he came home. "Did you speak to the scribe?" said Atemu.
"Yes," said his father. "The message was for a jewelry merchant in the city, Mr Akhon. I took him the message, and he was very happy! It was an order for a lot of gold jewelry from the capital city. It was very important for him."
"Mr Akhon also wants his pigeon. We'll take it to him next week." "Yes, father," Atemu said quietly. For the next week, Atemu looked after the pigeon. The pigeon started to fly again. Every morning, it flew to the roof where Atemu slept and cooed to him. Atemu was very happy to have a new pigeon friend. "I don't want you to go home," he said to it quietly.

اعتنى أتيمو بالحمامة. لقد صنع لها طاولة عالية لا تستطيع القطة القفز عليها.
وأعطاها الماء والحبوب وتحدث معها. وكانت الحمامة تهدل له بسعادة.
ذهب والد أتيمو إلى المدينة. وبعد ثلاثة أيام عاد إلى المنزل.
قال أتيمو "هل تحدثت مع الكاتب؟" . قال والده: "نعم. كانت الرسالة موجهة إلى تاجر مجوهرات في المدينة، السيد آخون. أخذت له الرسالة وكان سعيدًا جدًا! لقد كان طلبًا للكثير من المجوهرات الذهبية من العاصمة. لقد كان الأمر مهمًا للغاية بالنسبة له. يريد السيد آخون أيضًا حمامته. سنأخذها إليه الأسبوع المقبل."
قال أتيمو بهدوء: "نعم يا أبي." وعلى مدار الأسبوع التالي، اعتنى أتيمو بالحمامة. بدأت الحمامة تطير مرة أخرى. وكل صباح كانت تطير إلى السطح حيث ينام أتيمو وتهدل له. كان أتيمو سعيدًا للغاية بوجود الحمامة صديقته الجديدة. قال لها بهدوء: "لا أريدك أن تعودي إلى المنزل".

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



The next Sunday, Atemu and his father got into their boat to go to the city. The pigeon sat on Atemu's shoulder.
Atemu was excited because it was his first trip to the city, but he was also sad. It was his last day with the pigeon.
But he forgot about that when he saw the houses of the city. There were so many and some of the houses were very big! Some houses had white **domes** with many small holes in the yard or on the roof.
"What are they?" asked Atemu.
"Those are **dovecotes**." said Atemu's father. "Dovecotes are special houses for pigeons."

وفي يوم الأحد التالي، ركب أتيمو ووالده قاربهم للذهاب إلى المدينة. جلست الحمامة على كتف أتيمو.
كان أتيمو متحمسًا لأنها كانت رحلته الأولى إلى المدينة، لكنه كان حزينًا أيضًا. كان يومه الأخير مع الحمامة.
لكنه نسي ذلك عندما رأى بيوت المدينة. كان هناك الكثير وكانت بعض المنازل كبيرة جدًا! وكان لبعض المنازل قباب بيضاء بها العديد من الثقوب الصغيرة في الفناء أو على السطح.
سأل أتيمو "ما هذا؟"
قال والد أتيمو "تلك هي أبراج الحمام. أبراج الحمام هي بيوت خاصة للحمام."



Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع احداث القصة.



# Activities

## 1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Atemu watched the pigeon while he cleaned fruits. ( )
2. Nedjem ran and picked up the cat. ( )
3. The pigeon had a hurt leg. ( )
4. There was a very small box in the pigeon's leg. ( )
5. The bird was a carrier falcon. ( )
6. Atemu's father took the message to the scribe. ( )
7. Dovecotes are special houses for pigeons. ( )

## 2 Read and complete the following.

1. Important people in the city keep ..........................................
2. The bird's .......................................... was hurt.
3. The bird was a .......................................... pigeon.
4. The message was for a jewelry .......................................... in the city.
5. Some houses had white ..........................................
6. .......................................... are special houses for pigeons.
7. Atemu was .................................. because it was his first trip to the city.

## 3 Answer the following questions.

1. Why did Atemu's father take the message to the scribe? ..........................
2. How did Atemu look after the pigeon? ..........................................
3. Why was the message important for Mr Akhon? ..........................................
4. Why would Atemu and his father take the pigeon to Mr Akhon? ..............
5. Why couldn't the bird fly? ..........................................
6. What did the bird have on its leg? ..........................................
7. What kind of bird was it? ..........................................
8. Who was Mr Akhon? ..........................................

# Part (3) The End



Finally, they arrived at a large house. "We're here!" Atemu's father said. A smiling man came to meet them. He was wearing a lot of jewelry. Atemu knew it was the merchant.

"Welcome to my home!" Mr Akhon said. "Thank you so much for finding my message. It was from my most important customer. And thanks for looking after my pigeon. Her name is Amethyst – because her feathers are the same color as these purple stones. She is my best bird!"

"She was hurt," said Atemu.

"I see," said the merchant. Can she fly now?"

"Yes," said Atemu. "She's much better."

"Come with me then. I'll show you where she lives."

وأخيرا وصلوا إلى منزل كبير. قال والد أتيمو "ها قد وصلنا!" .

جاء رجل مبتسم لمقابلتهم. كان يرتدي الكثير من المجوهرات. عرف أتيمو أنه التاجر.

قال السيد آخون "أهلًا وسهلًا بكم في منزلي! شكرًا جزيلاً لك على العثور على رسالتي. لقد كانت الرسالة من أهم عميل لدي. وشكرًا على رعايتك لحمامتي. اسمها أميثست – لأن ريشها من نفس لون هذه الحجارة الأرجوانية. إنها أفضل الطيور لدي!"

قال أتيمو: "لقد كانت مُصابة".

قال التاجر: "أفهم ذلك. هل يمكنها الطيران الآن؟"

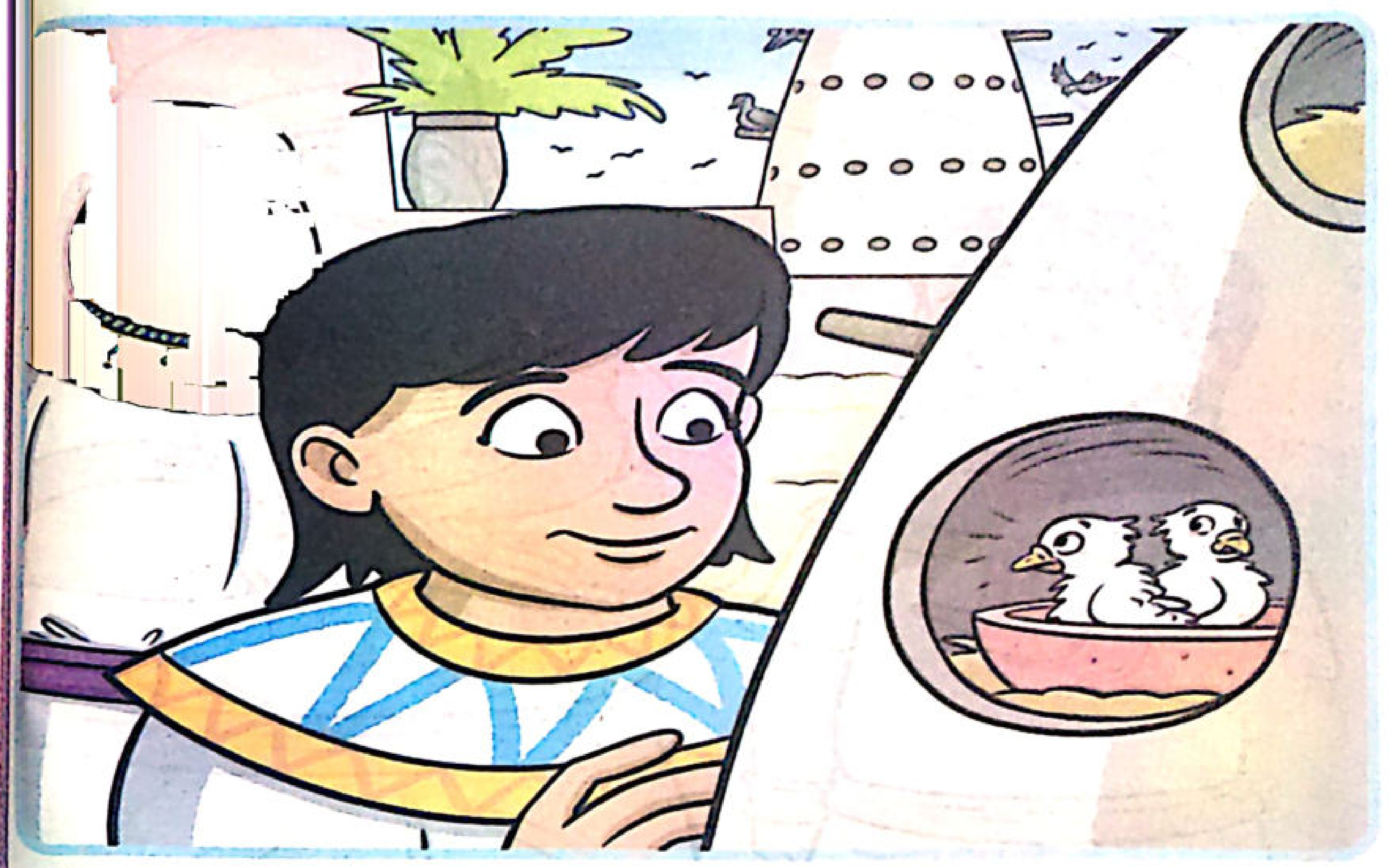
قال أتيمو: "نعم. إنها أفضل بكثير."

"تعالوا معي إذن. سأريكم أين تعيش ".



Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



Atemu and his father followed Mr Akhon into his yard. At one side, there were three tall dovecotes. "My birds will come home soon," the merchant said.

"How many do you have?" said Atemu.

"Oh, a lot." said Mr Akhon.

"They have a lot of babies, so I don't know exactly."

Atemu looked into a dovecote. He could see some baby birds. "They're so cute!" Atemu said.

"It's time to go, son," said Atemu's father. "Say goodbye to the bird."

تبع أتيمو ووالده السيد آخون إلى فناء منزله. على أحد الجوانب، كان هناك ثلاثة أبراج حمام طويلة.

قال التاجر: "ستعود طيوري إلى المنزل قريبًا".

قال أتيمو "كم لديك؟".

قال السيد آخون "أوه، الكثير." .

"لديهم الكثير من الصغار، لذلك لا أعرف بالضبط."

نظر أتيمو إلى أحد أبراج الحمام. واستطاع رؤية بعض الطيور الصغيرة. قال أتيمو "إنها لطيفة جدًا!".

قال والد أتيمو: "حان وقت الرحيل يا بني قل وداعًا للطائر."

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



"Goodbye Amethyst," said Atemu, softly. He touched her purple feathers, and she cooed. He was very sad, but he tried to smile. The merchant was a kind man. He spoke to Atemu.
"You say Amethyst got well again, but she didn't fly home."
"Yes" said Atemu. "Well, I think she'll be happy to stay with you now."
"Oh wow!" said Atemu. "Thank you so much." He looked at Amethyst, and she jumped onto his shoulder.
"She'll need a small house," said Mr Akhon.
"I can make one!" said Atemu. "I'm learning to be a carpenter."
"I'll help you," said his dad.

قال أتيمو بهدوء: "وداعًا يا أميثست". لمس ريشها الأرجواني، فهدلت. كان حزينًا جدًا، لكنه حاول أن يبتسم.
وكان التاجر رجلاً طيباً. و تحدث إلى أتيمو. "أنت تقول أن أميثست تحسنت مرة أخرى، لكنها لم تعد إلى المنزل."
قال أتيمو"نعم".
قال السيد آخون "حسنًا، أعتقد أنها ستكون سعيدة بالبقاء معك الآن."
قال أتيمو "أوه واو! شكراً جزيلاً." نظر إلى أميثست، وقفزت على كتفه.
قال السيد آخون: "ستحتاج إلى منزل صغير".
قال أتيمو "أستطيع أن أصنع واحدًا! أنا أتعلم أن أكون نجارًا."
قال والده: "سوف أساعدك".



Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.

On the boat home, Atemu's father said, "Mr Akhon is a very good man. He gave you his best bird!"

Atemu said, "Yes. How can I thank him?"

"You could ask the scribe to write a thank you letter for you," said his father.

"Good idea!" said Atemu"And Amethyst can take it to him!"

قال والد أتيمو وهما على متن القارب عائدين إلى المنزل. "السيد آخون رجل طيب للغاية. لقد أعطاك أفضل طائر لديه!"

قال أتيمو. "نعم. كيف يمكنني أن أشكره؟"

قال والده: "يمكنك أن تطلب من الكاتب أن يكتب لك رسالة شكر".

قال أتيمو "فكره جيدة! ويمكن لأميثست أن تأخذها إليه!"

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.








## 1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Atemu and his father went to the city by car. ( )
2. Atemu was sad because it was the last day with the pigeon. ( )
3. Some of the houses were very small. ( )
4. Dovecotes are special houses for pigeons. ( )
5. Mr Akhon didn't thank Atemu. ( )
6. The message was from an important customer. ( )
7. Atemu was happy to take the pigeon home. ( )

## 2 Read and complete the following.

1. Mr Akhon was wearing a lot of .................................................
2. The pigeon's name was .................... because she had purple feathers.
3. Mr Akhon's pigeons had a lot of cute .................................................
4. Mr Akhon told Atemu to make a .................................... for the pigeon.
5. The baby birds were so .................................................
6. The merchant was a ................................................. man.
7. The pigeon jumped on Atemu's .................................................

## 3 Answer the following questions.

1. Why did Mr Akhon say thank you to Atemu? ....................................
2. Why did Mr Akhon give Atemu the pigeon? ....................................
3. Why did Atemu's father say Mr Akhon was a good man? ....................................
4. What was Mr Akhon wearing? ....................................
5. What's the pigeon's name? ....................................
6. What did Mr Akhon show Atemu and his father? ....................................
7. What would Atemu make for the pigeon? ....................................
8. How could Atemu thank Mr Akhon? ....................................



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

# General Activities

## 1 Put the story events in the correct order.

1. Atemu had never been to the city. ( )
2. Atemu fed the huge flock of birds some grain. ( )
3. Atemu gave the bird and message to Mr Akhon. ( )
4. The bird had a box on its leg. It was a carrier pigeon. ( )
5. One bird had a gray beak. Its wing was hurt. ( )
6. Atemu made a table for the bird. ( )
7. Mr. Akhon gave Amethyst to Atemu. ( )

## 2 Complete the sentences with the words.

**home - leg - news - orders - pigeons**

1. Important people in Ancient Egypt often kept carrier .................................
2. Carrier pigeons can learn where their ................................................................ is.
3. Carrier pigeons often carried .................... from one place to another city.
4. People used carrier pigeons to send ........................................ to merchants.
5. People attached their messages to the pigeon's .........................................

## 3 Who says this in the story? Read and write the names.

**Atemu - Atemu's father - Atemu's mother - Nedjem**

1. "I think its wing is hurt," (....................................)
2. "You should catch rats and snakes, not birds!" (....................................)
3. "It can't fly," (....................................)
4. "That's very clever!" (....................................)
5. "I'll take it to my friend, the scribe." (....................................)



## Complete the paragraph with the past simple form of the verbs.

Atemu loved birds. Every day, birds .................... (come) into his yard, and Atemu .................... (give) them grain. His sister's cat watched the birds, too, but it never .................... (catch) them. One day, Atemu .................... (hear) a strange noise in the sky. A lot of birds were flying into a field near his home. Atemu went to the field and .................... (throw) grain to the birds. The birds .................... (eat) the grain and then .................... (fly) away. But one bird was different. It stayed on the ground.

## 5 Complete the paragraph. Check your answers in the story.

All of the birds were light gray, with green feathers on their .................... and .................... feathers on their chests. But one bird was a little different. It was .................... than the other birds. They had .................... beaks, but its beak was .................... It also sounded different. The .................... the other birds made was a long "whoo", but it went "coo coo". It had .................... on its wings, but they didn't.



## Complete the sentences with the words.

**Amethyst - carpenter - domes - jewelry - order - pigeons - yard**

1. My uncle keeps .................... on his roof. They're his favorite birds.
2. Our house has a big .......... where we have barbecues in nice weather.
3. That .................... makes excellent wooden furniture.
4. .................... was a very popular stone with Pharaohs in Ancient Egypt.
5. If the restaurant loses your .................... , you won't get any food.
6. People often wear .................... when they want to look good.
7. What's that building with big glass .................... on the roof?



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

# Activities on Review (4)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Next month, Nadia is going on a ..........................................
   a) journey b) trip c) tour d) voyage
2. She's going to see the birds and animals which live near the ..................
   a) hill b) water c) mountain d) cliff
3. They'll travel along the river in small ..........................................
   a) ships b) buses c) planes d) boats
4. They mustn't swim because there might be ..........................................
   a) fish b) crabs c) crocodiles d) snakes

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Eco-tourism is more .......................................... than traditional tourism.
   a) simple b) easy c) dangerous d) sustainable
2. Animals need safe places to find ..........................................
   a) food b) babies c) sugar d) flour
3. My neighbor has always been .......................................... to us. We like him.
   a) unkind b) cruel c) kind d) angry
4. We're using nature cameras to .......................................... wildlife.
   a) paint b) draw c) grow d) film

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**must - habitats - well - mustn't - eco-tourism**

I love going on vacation, but I think 1)...................... is a more sustainable way to travel. We learned about it in geography today and our teacher explained it really 2)....................... For example, you 3)...................... throw litter on beaches because this can make animals sick. I love watching birds and other animals in their natural 4)................................. .

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Once upon a time, there was a little red hen who really liked to work. Every day she planted seeds in her beautiful garden, and waited for her plants to grow. She had three great friends: a mouse, a cat, and a dog, but all three of them were very lazy! One day, the little red hen was really tired, so she asked the mouse, the cat, and the dog to help her plant some wheat. They all said "No!" She decided to bake a big chocolate cake. No one wanted to help her bake the cake, but they wanted to eat it with the hen! "Can we help you eat the cake, please, Hen?" but the hen said, " As you plant, you shall collect."

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The hen liked to ..........................................
   a) play b) sleep c) work d) sing
2. The underlined pronoun "she" refers to the ..........................................
   a) dog b) hen c) mouse d) cat
3. All her friends were ..........................................
   a) active b) lazy c) clever d) smart

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. What do we learn from the story? ..........................................
5. What did the hen plant in her garden? ..........................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. family - my - I - with - visiting - this - place - love - .

..........................................

2. distances - Migrating - long - fly - very - birds - .

..........................................

3. charity - children's - We - decided - start up - to - a local - .

..........................................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. If she .................... (feel) thirsty, she will drink some water.
2. I went to the sports center yesterday to .................... (played) volleyball.

## 7 Punctuate the following.

- why do the old people use a multi-grip ..........................................

## 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about "A habitat":

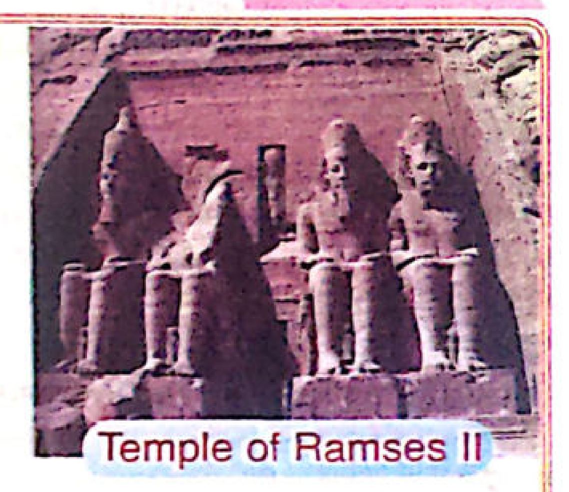
**Guiding elements:**

**- What is a habitat? - How many types of habitats are there in Egypt?**

## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Ramses II was a great Egyptian King. When he was very young, his father Sethi became the Pharaoh of Egypt. Later on, when he was around 10, young Ramses helped his father rule the country.



Temple of Ramses II

By the time he was 20 years old, Ramses was a great soldier. In 1290 BCE, he became Pharaoh and leader of the Egyptian armies. He won many battles and every time he won, Ancient Egypt got more land and became bigger and more powerful.

One of the most famous battles was the Battle of Kadesh in 1279 BCE. Ramses won and became a hero. However, sixteen years later, Ramses made peace with his Hittite neighbors. He was the first ruler ever to sign a written peace treaty.

Ramses liked building splendid monuments. His most famous temple is the one at Abu Simbel, where you can see four enormous statues of him at the entrance.

Ramses II lived to be about 90 years old. When he died around 1233 BCE, he was first buried in the Valley of the Kings, but today Ramses's Mummy is in the National Museum of Egyptian Civilization.

كان رمسيس الثاني ملكًا مصريًا عظيمًا. عندما كان صغيرًا جدًا، أصبح والده سيتي فرعون مصر. لاحقا، عندما كان عمره حوالي ١٠ سنوات، ساعد رمسيس الشاب والده في حكم البلد. وقبل بلوغه سن العشرين، كان رمسيس جنديًا رائعًا. في ١٢٩٠ قبل الميلاد، أصبح فرعون وقائد الجيوش المصرية. لقد فاز بالعديد من المعارك، وفي كل مرة يفوز بها، كانت مصر القديمة تحصل على المزيد من الأراضي وأصبحت أكبر وأكثر قوة. واحدة من المعارك الأكثر شهرة كانت معركة قادش في ١٢٧٩ قبل الميلاد. فاز رمسيس وأصبح بطلاً. ومع ذلك، بعد ستة عشر عامًا، أقام رمسيس السلام مع جيرانه الحيثيين. كان أول حاكم على الإطلاق يوقع على معاهدة سلام مكتوبة. أحب رمسيس بناء الآثار الرائعة. معبده الأكثر شهرة هو معبد أبو سمبل، حيث يمكنك رؤية أربعة تماثيل هائلة له عند المدخل. عاش رمسيس الثاني تقريبًا لسن ٩٠ عامًا. عندما توفي حوالي عام ١٢٣٣ قبل الميلاد، تم دفنه لأول مرة في وادي الملوك، لكن مومياء رمسيس اليوم موجودة في المتحف القومي للحضارة المصرية.

# Listening Texts

## Unit (7)

### Lesson (1)

**- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

We have a hot, dry climate here in Egypt, so artifacts aren't damaged by cold and wet weather. This helps to preserve them. The Ancient Egyptians also knew that certain materials could last a long time. That's why they built the Pyramids with granite, a very hard and durable stone.

### Lesson (2)

**- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

Today, cats are still popular pets in Egypt. Other animals that people keep today include turtles, fish, and birds, which are much smaller and easier to look after than baboons and crocodiles. I adore cats.

### Lesson (3)

**- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

One of the most beautiful artifacts from Ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's mask, which was found in his tomb. The mask is gold, with blue lines between gold lines. Under his chin is a thin beard. There is also a snake on the top of his head.

### Lessons (4 & 5)

**- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

The Ancient Egyptians used iron for small items, like jewelry. Copper and bronze were common metals for tools because they were easier to find. But later on, iron agricultural tools and weapons began to appear. This was the result of the Ancient Egyptians getting more iron through trade with other countries.

### Activities on Unit (7)

**- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

The Ancient Egyptians traded with other countries, and metal was one thing they traded. They first found metal in rocks. Metal was harder than rocks. They could melt it into different shapes. They used metal to make tools and weapons..

## Unit (8)

### Lesson (1)

**- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

Fares and Yaseen are cousins. They visited their grandma on the weekend. They found a box of old toys at grandma's house. There was an action figure and a train set. Fares loved playing with a train set when he was younger. Yassen didn't have a train set, but his sister had a doll's house. They both played with it.

### Lesson (2)

**- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

When Amina was little, she really liked games that used a lot of imagination. She was very good at making up stories. She had a doll's house, some cuddly toys, and some action figures.

### Lesson (3)

**- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

Ali was shopping with his parents at the market. He saw a stall that sold toys. A man showed him how a train moved. Ali thought the toys were amazing. Ali's dad came to see the toys, too. He liked the train, so he bought it. He said Ali could play with it.

### Lessons (4 & 5)

**- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

My favorite games are video games. I don't play them very often, though. I play for about an hour on the weekend. It's fun! My favorite games are ones where you build cities. I've made a really big city using different bricks. It has animals and plants in it, too. I like these games because you can be creative and make something new.

### Activities on Unit (8)

**- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

When I was younger, I had a box of toys. There was an action figure. I loved playing with it. I made up lots of games for my action figures. I also had rollerblades. I had a go on them. My sister had a doll's house. She liked playing with it. I played board games with my brother, but he usually beat me.

## Unit (9)

### Lesson (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories. The one about a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The setting is the countryside, many years ago. Two of the characters – the man and his son – take turns riding the donkey because it's a long journey.

### Lesson (2)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

My name's Tom. I'm 11 years old and I'm from the USA. My favorite things are space, animals, and the color blue. What are your favorite things? Please email back to tell me!
My email address is tom@beachnet.usa

### Lesson (3)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Once upon a time there was once a boy who looked after some sheep. The boy was bored. One day, he played a trick on the villagers. He shouted "Wolf"! The villagers came up the hill to save the sheep. When they went to the sheep, there was no wolf. It was a joke.

### Lessons (4 & 5)

- Listen and circle the correct from a, b, c or d.

My name is Hugo and I live in Biarritz, France. I live on the coast and I love sailing my boat. Last week, I was sailing when I saw something in the water – your message in a bottle! This means it traveled over 6,000 kilometers.

### Activities on Unit (9)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Yesterday, I was on the beach near my house. It was morning and it was sunny. I was walking with my friend when we saw a big whale. We were scared.

### Activities on Review (3)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Playing is good for us in lots of different ways. When we play, we feel happy. We also learn about the world and ourselves. When we play, we learn to solve problems and make friends.

## Unit (10)

### Lesson (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

"The early bird catches the worm." This proverb has more than one meaning. It tells us that a bird that is early, or the first to try to catch a worm, usually catches it. So, it also means that to be successful, you need to be the first to do something.

### Lesson (2)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Hi, I'm Adam. I love visiting the desert with my family. We went last year, and in the evenings, we saw lots of wildlife when the sun went down. More animals live on the sand than you might think. This year we'll stay outside and cook meals under the stars, so we must bring a tent. Then we'll walk in small groups to see the wildlife around us.

### Lesson (3)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Some birds fly very long distances, making the same journey year after year. Even young birds that migrate for the first time seem to know how to get to the place they need to be. How do these birds know where to go? They might use the sun, the stars, or the things they can see on the way. Scientists have spent a long time trying to find out how they do this!

### Lessons (4 & 5)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba dive here.

### Activities on Unit (10)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

We can all think about things we can do to protect habitats. For example, we mustn't waste water or drop litter. We can recycle paper, so people don't cut down trees. We can also plant flowers and plants, because these are great for birds and insects.

## Unit (11)

### Lesson (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

My neighbor has always been kind to us. She used to help my mom look after me when I was younger. Now she's getting a bit older, and it's sometimes difficult for her to go shopping. So I ask her what she needs, then I go to the stores and get it. I like to help her.

### Lesson (2)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

We're doing a wildlife project at school, and my teacher installed two nature cameras in the forest. We're using them to film wildlife. He put one on the ground to film animals at night. He put the other in a tree to film birds during the day. Then we recorded how many animals and birds we see, and what they're doing.

### Lesson (3 A)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Rawan first started volunteering when she was ten years old. She helps out in the summer group by helping children learn reading. She likes helping children because they are very important to our future. Her advice for teenagers is be patient and try to improve their skills.

### Lesson (3 B)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

The older brother planted the seed, and soon a thick, tall plant grew up and up to the moon. The brother climbed up the plant to look for his reward. But when he reached the moon, the plant disappeared. He was alone, and he couldn't go back.

### Lessons (4 & 5)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Fareeda started preparatory school in 2006. Here, she participated in her first volunteer event. She and a team of volunteers did a beach clean-up. In 2010, she organized her first charity event delivering food boxes to families in the community.

## Activities on Unit (11)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

I love reading, so I decided to help out in the kindergarten class on a Thursday by reading to the children. I love reading stories with the younger children, and they like it too. We're starting up a project where they think of their own stories next week. I'm looking forward to that.

## Activities on Review (4)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Hi, I'm Nadia. Next month, we're going on a tour to see the birds and animals which live near the water. We'll travel along the river in small boats, and camp in tents at night. We'll bring our cameras, because we'll see some amazing things. We hope to see lizards and turtles, as well as lots of interesting plants. However, we mustn't swim because there might be crocodiles!

AL-BAHER

# CONNECT

## Final Revision

### Second Term

الصف السادس الابتدائي



# Student Book Audio Scripts

## Unit (7) Lesson (3)  METAL IN ANCIENT EGYPT

### Listen to Injy's and Dalia's class presentation.



**Injy :** Our class presentation is about trade in Ancient Egypt. I'm Injy, and this is Dalia. The Ancient Egyptians bought from and sold many things to different countries. This is called trading, Dalia, can you tell us what kinds of things the Ancient Egyptians traded?

عرضنا التقديمي يدور حول التجارة في مصر القديمة. أنا إنجي وهذه داليا. اشترى المصريون القدماء من بلدان مختلفة وباعوا أشياء كثيرة. وهذا ما يسمى التجارة، داليا، هل يمكنك أن تخبرنا ما هي أنواع الأشياء التي تاجر بها المصريون القدماء؟

**Dalia :** Thanks, Injy. Well, one of the most interesting things they traded with other countries was metal! The Ancient Egyptians first found metal in rocks around 7,000 years ago. They heated the rocks and took out the metal parts. They learned that metal was harder than stone, and that they could melt and make different shapes with it.

شكرا ، إنجي، جسنا ، كان المعدن هو أحد أكثر الأشياء التي تاجروا بها مع الدول الأخرى إثارة للاهتمام. وجد المصريون القدماء المعدن لأول مرة في الصخور منذ حوالى ٧٠٠٠ عام . قاموا بتسخين الصخور وإخراج الأجزاء المعدنية. علموا أن المعدن كان أقوى من الحجر، وأنهم كانوا يستطيعون إذابته وصنع أشكال مختلفة منه.

**Injy :** That's fascinating, Dalia, thank you. What did they use the metal for?

هذا رائع ، يا داليا ، شكرا لك. فيم استخدموا المعدن؟

**Dalia :** They used it to make tools and weapons, so that they could hunt on the land, and grow things like food more easily. Gold was a popular metal for making jewelry and decorations. Silver was also used, but it was rarer. As art and culture were very important to the Ancient Egyptians, many of their craftsmen used different types of metal to make statues and sculptures to sell.

استخدموه لصنع الأدوات والأسلحة، حتى يتمكنوا من الصيد على الأرض، وزراعة أشياء مثل الطعام بسهولة أكبر. كان الذهب معدنا شائعا لصنع المجوهرات والزينة. ثم استخدام الفضة أيضا، لكنها كانت نادرة. نظرا لأن الفن والثقافة كانا مهمين جدا للمصريين القدماء، فقد استخدم العديد من الحرفيين أنواعا مختلفة من المعدن لصنع التماثيل والمنحوتات لبيعها.

**Injy :** That's right. But they didn't just sell metal to other countries. They also bought some metals like silver, which they got through trade with countries. And as they traded more, this helped the Ancient Egyptians develop their economy, until Ancient Egypt was one of the strongest economies in the world.

هذا صحيح، لكنهم لم يبيعوا المعدن فقط إلى دول أخرى، بل اشتروا بعض المعادن، مثل الفضة، والتي حصلوا عليها من خلال التجارة مع البلدان. ومع ازدياد التجارة، ساعد هذا المصريين القدماء على تطوير اقتصادهم ، حتى كانت مصر القديمة واحدة من أقوى الاقتصادات في العالم.

**Dalia :** Yes, you only need to look at the Ancient Egyptian artifacts in museums today to see that this is true.

نعم، ما عليك سوى إلقاء نظرة على القطع الأثرية المصرية القديمة في المتاحف اليوم لترى أن هذا صحيح.

**Injy :** Well, that's the end of our presentation. Does anyone have any questions , please? حسناء هذا هو نهاية العرض التقديمي. هل لدى أي شخص أي أسئلة من فضلكم ؟



## Unit (8) Lesson (3) WE LOVED PLAYING WITH OUR TRAIN SET



### Listen to the story. Who bought a toy?

**The beginning:**



Ali was tired. His parents were shopping at the market. It was a hot day. Ali's feet hurt, and he really wanted to go home.

"Are you OK, Ali?" asked Mom. "We've almost finished. We need tomatoes from this stall. Wait here, then I'll get you some lemonade."

كان على متعبا. كان والداه يتسوقان في السوق. كان يوما حارا. كانت قدما على تؤلمه ، وأراد حقا العودة إلى المنزل.

سألته الأم «هل أنت بخير، يا على؟». «لقد انتهينا تقريبا. نحتاج إلى الطماطم من هذا الكشك. انتظر هنا، ثم سأحضر لك بعض عصير الليمون».

"Thanks. Mom," said Ali. He waited, and then he saw a stall with toys made from wood and metal. There were boats, trains, and animals. Ali's parents were choosing vegetables, so Ali asked if he could look at the toys.

"OK," said Dad. "But we aren't buying toys today!"

"That's OK," said Ali. "I enjoy looking".

قال علي: «شكرا يا أمي». انتظر، لم أرَ كشك ألعاب مصنوعة من الخشب والمعدن. كانت هناك قوارب وقطارات وحيوانات.
كان والدا علي يختاران الخضار، لذلك سأل علي عما إذا كان بإمكانه النظر إلى الألعاب.

قال الأب: «حسنا، ولكننا لا نشتري الألعاب اليوم!» قال علي: «هذا جيد، فأنا أستمتع بالنظر».

### The Middle:

An old man was sitting behind the stall, making a small cat out of wood. He saw Ali looking at the toys and smiled. The man picked up a train. "Look at this," he said. He pushed a button under the train, and the wheels turned. When he put it down on the stall, it started to move.

"Do you like trains?" he asked.

"I stopped playing with my train set a few years ago." Ali replied. "But this is brilliant".

Ali looked at the train again. It was small, but very beautiful. The other toys on the stall were amazing, too. There was an elephant which moved its trunk. There was a boat with beautiful cloth sails.

كان رجل عجوز يجلس خلف الكشك، يصنع قطة صغيرة من الخشب. رأى علي ينظر إلى الألعاب وابتسم. التقط الرجل قطارا.
قال: «انظر إلى هذا». وضغط على زر تحت القطار، فانطلقت العجلات وعندما وضعه على الكشك بدأ يتحرك.
سأل الرجل: «هل تحب القطارات؟»
أجاب علي: توقفت عن اللعب بقطاري قبل بضع سنوات». «لكن هذا رائع». نظر علي إلى القطار مرة أخرى. كان صغيرا، لكنه جميل جدا. كانت الألعاب الأخرى في الكشك مذهلة أيضا. كان هناك فيل يحرك خرطومه. كان هناك قارب بشراع جميلة مصنوعة من القماش.

### The End:

Ali's dad came to see. "Wow! My brother and I had a train like this when I was a child!" he said. "We loved playing with our train set." He picked up the train, smiling. "I'll take it!" said Dad.

Ali laughed. "I thought you said we weren't buying toys today, Dad!" Dad laughed. You can play with it too!"

جاء والد علي ليرى. قال الأب: «واو! كان لدي أنا وأخي قطار مثل هذا عندما كنت طفلا!».
«لقد أحببنا اللعب بقطارنا». التقط القطار مبتسما وقال: «سآخذه!»
ضحك علي: «اعتقدت أنك قلت إننا لن نشتري ألعابا اليوم يا أبي!».
ضحك الأب قائلا: «يمكنك أن تلعب به أيضا!».

## Unit (9) Lesson (3)  THE BOY WHO CRIED WOLF



### Listen to the story. What is the moral of the story?



Once, there was a boy called Peter who lived in a village. He worked alone as a shepherd looking after sheep.
Every day, he took the sheep up the hill and rested while the sheep ate the delicious grass.

كان هناك صبي اسمه بيتر يعيش في إحدى القرى. كان يعمل بمفرده راعيا يعتني بالأغنام، كان يأخذ الخراف كل يوم إلى أعلى التل ويستريح بينما تأكل الخراف العشب اللذيذ.

One day, Peter was lying on the grass watching his sheep. He felt lonely and bored and decided to have some fun. First, he shouted, "Wolf! There's a wolf!" to the villagers in the field below: Next, he lay down and waited. The villagers were busy working, but they were worried about Peter's sheep, so they put down their tools and ran to save them.

في أحد الأيام، كان بيتر مستلقيا على العشب يراقب خرافه لقد شعر بالوحدة والملل وقرر الاستمتاع ببعض المرح، أولاً، صرخ قائلاً: «ذئب»! إلى القرويين في الحقل بالأسفل: بعد ذلك استلقى وانتظر، كان القرويون منشغلين بالعمل، لكنهم كانوا قلقين بشأن خراف بيتر، لذا تركوا أدواتهم وركضوا لإنقاذهم.

They reached the top of the hill, hot and tired. They saw Peter. He was lying under a tree and he was laughing. There is no wolf! It was a joke!" he said. The villagers were very angry and said, "Peter, you must tell the truth! After that, they left Peter and went back to work.

وصلوا إلى قمة التل وهم يشعرون بالحر والتعب. لقد رأوا بيتر مستلقيًا تحت شجرة وكان يضحك قائلاً «لا يوجد ذئب ! لقد كانت مزحة». فغضب القرويون بشدة وقالوا: «بيتر، يجب أن تقول الحقيقة، وبعد ذلك تركوا بيتر وعادوا إلى العمل.

Then. Peter did the same thing again later that week. The villagers were very angry, "Peter, you mustn't waste our time! We're very busy!" they said.

ثم فعل بيتر نفس الشيء مرة أخرى في وقت لاحق من ذلك الأسبوع. كان القرويون غاضبين للغاية، قالوا: «بيتر، لا يجب أن تضيع وقتنا نحن مشغولون للغاية!»

Finally, on the last day of the week, Peter was with his sheep at the top of the hill when suddenly a real wolf appeared. Peter was very scared and climbed a tree. He called and called for someone to help him, but no one arrived. The wolf killed and ate the sheep.
Peter understood why no one came, and he was very sorry.

وأخيرا، في اليوم الأخير من الأسبوع، كان بيتر مع أغنامه على قمة التل عندما ظهر فجأة ذئب حقيقي كان بيتر خائفا جدا وتسلق شجرة. أخذ ينادي أحدًا لمساعدته لكن لم يصل أحد. فقتل الذئب الخراف وأكلها. فهم بيتر لماذا لم يأت أحد، وكان يشعر بالأسف الشديد.







## Listen and read.




Nadia went to the shops with her friends. They bought some clothes, some jewelry, and some snacks. Then, they passed a toy shop. In the window of the toy shop was a cuddly toy. "Oh, look!" said Nadia. "Last time I came here, I was with my sister. She loved this cuddly toy. I'm going to buy it for her".

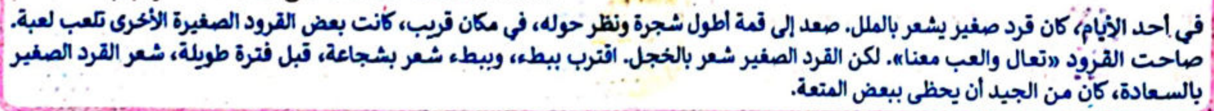
ذهبت نادية إلى المتاجر مع صديقاتها. اشتروا بعض الملابس وبعض المجوهرات وبعض الوجبات الخفيفة، ثم مروا بمتجر لعب وكان في فاترينة العرض دمية محشوة «أوه. انظروا. قالت نادية آخر مرة أتيت فيها إلى هنا ، كنت مع أختي. لقد أحبَّت هذه اللعبة. أنا سوف اشتريها لها.



Last summer, I moved to a big, busy city. I really missed the countryside. Then, one afternoon, I was walking through the middle of the city when I found a beautiful park. I spent the rest of the day there, among the trees and the flowers. I still miss the countryside sometimes, but I go to the park every day. It's my favorite place in the whole city!

في الصيف الماضي، انتقلت إلى مدينة كبيرة مزدحمة، لقد اشتقت إلى الريف حقا، ثم بعد ظهر أحد الأيام ، كنت أسير في وسط المدينة عندما وجدت حديقة جميلة، قضيت بقية اليوم هناك، بين الأشجار والزهور. ما زلت أفتقد الريف أحيانًا ، لكني أذهب إلى الحديقة كل يوم، إنه مكاني المفضل في المدينة بأكملها!

One day, a little monkey was feeling bored. He climbed to the top of the tallest tree and looked around. Nearby, some other little monkeys were playing a game. "Come and play with us!" they shouted. But the little monkey felt shy. Slowly, he went closer. And slowly, he felt braver. Before long, the little monkey felt happy. It was good to have fun!



في أحد الأيام، كان قرد صغير يشعر بالملل. صعد إلى قمة أطول شجرة ونظر حوله، في مكان قريب، كانت بعض القرود الصغيرة الأخرى تلعب لعبة. صاحت القرود «تعال والعب معنا». لكن القرد الصغير شعر بالخجل. اقترب ببطء، وببطء شعر بشجاعة، قبل فترة طويلة، شعر القرد الصغير بالسعادة، كان من الجيد أن يحظى ببعض المتعة.

When I was a boy, I liked to go to the beach with my grandfather. We used his metal detector to find interesting things in the sand. One time, we found a small, metal box. "Treasure!" I said. My grandfather laughed. "Go on, then," he said. "What's inside?" I opened the box. Inside, there was a very special kind of treasure. It was a letter. A very old letter ...

عندما كنت صبيا، كنت أحب الذهاب إلى الشاطئ مع جدي. استخدمنا كاشف المعادن الخاص به للعثور على أشياء مثيرة للاهتمام في الرمال. ذات مرة وجدنا صندوقًا معدنيًا صغيرًا. قلتُ «كنزا» . ضحك جدي. قال: «استمر، إذن». «ماذا يوجد بداخله؟» فتحت الصندوق. في الداخل، كان هناك نوع خاص جدًا من الكنز. لقد كانت رسالة. رسالة قديمة جداً...

## Unit (10) Lesson (3)  THE BENEFITS OF ECO-TOURISM

###  Listen to Lina's presentation about eco-tourism.



My presentation today is about eco-tourism and why it is a good idea. Egypt is a very beautiful country, so we must look after it. However, lots of people want to visit Egypt because it is a very interesting place.

عرض اليوم يدور حول السياحة البيئية وسبب كونها فكرة جيدة. مصر بلد جميل جدا، لذا يجب أن تعتني به، ومع ذلك، يرغب الكثير من الناس في زيارة مصر لأنها مكان مثير للاهتمام للغاية .

It is good if we have lots of visitors, but tourism can sometimes mean too many big hotels and too much traffic. This can cause problems. Eco-tourism is good because people can visit and enjoy the environment but not in a way that damages the environment. These are my ideas about why I think eco-tourism is a good idea:

من الجيد أن يكون لدينا عدد كبير من الزوار، لكن السياحة قد تعني في بعض الأحيان وجود عدد كبير جدا من الفنادق الكبيرة وحركة مرور كبيرة جدا. هذا يمكن أن يسبب مشاكل. السياحة البيئية جيدة لأن الناس يمكنهم زيارة البيئة والاستمتاع بها ولكن ليس بطريقة تضر بالبيئة، هذه هي أفكاري حول سبب اعتقادي أن السياحة البيئية فكرة جيدة:

If people learn more about the environment, they will want to protect it. If tourists take care of the places they visit, they will cause less damage to the environment. If tourists stay in simple, eco-friendly accommodation, there won't be so many big hotels. If eco-tourism is successful, it will create new jobs for the local people. Thank you for listening. Are there any questions?

إذا تعلم الناس المزيد عن البيئة، فسوف يرغبون في حمايتها، إذا اهتم السائحون بالأماكن التي يزورونها، فإنهم سيتسببون في ضرر أقل للبيئة، إذا أقام السائحون في أماكن إقامة بسيطة وصديقة للبيئة، فلن يكون هناك الكثير من الفنادق الكبيرة، إذا نجحت السياحة البيئية، فإنها ستخلق فرص عمل جديدة للسكان المحليين. شكرا على استماعكم، هل هناك أية أسئلة؟

## Unit (11) Lesson (3)  IT'S GOOD TO GIVE BACK TO THE COMMUNITY

###  Listen to the interview with Rawan Ibrahim.




**Presenter :** Today we are talking about volunteering in the community, and here is a community volunteer leader. Rawan Ibrahim, Rawan, welcome! Can you tell us how you started volunteering?

سنتحدث اليوم عن العمل التطوعي في المجتمع ومعنا هنا قائدة مجتمعية متطوعة. روان ابراهيم، روان، مرحبًا! هل يمكنك أن تخبرينا كيف بدأتِ العمل التطوعي ؟

**Rawan** : I first started volunteering when I was 13 at an after-school volunteer group. I began by helping the younger children with their reading and writing. I loved working with them, and I've volunteered ever since.

بدأت العمل التطوعي لأول مرة عندما كان عمري ١٣ عاما في مجموعة تطوعية بعد المدرسة، بدأت بمساعدة الأطفال الصغار في القراءة والكتابة. أحببت العمل معهم، وتطوعت منذ ذلك الحين.

**Presenter** : Since then, 16-year-old Rawan has participated in many school and community projects. Now she volunteers in the Summer Schools Activity Group every summer. In the group, Rawan helps out with the children's activities, like sports events and trips to parks and museums. She also organizes the volunteers for fundraising activities. Rawan, how do you find time to do all these things?

ومنذ ذلك الحين، شاركت روان البالغة من العمر ١٦ عاما في العديد من المشاريع المدرسية والمجتمعية، وهي الآن تتطوع في مجموعة أنشطة المدارس الصيفية كل صيف، وفي المجموعة، تساعد روان في أنشطة الأطفال. مثل الأحداث الرياضية والرحلات إلى الحدائق والمتاحف، كما أنها تنظم المتطوعين لأنشطة جمع التبرعات. روان، كيف تجدين الوقت للقيام بكل هذه الأشياء ؟

**Rawan** : It was hard at first, but I wrote a timetable to help me and then it was easy. And this year, I started volunteering with Food Box, a charity that delivers healthy meal boxes to families who need help. I became interested in Food Box because my mom volunteers there.

كان الأمر صعبا في البداية، لكنني كتبت جدولا زمنيا لمساعدتي، وبعد ذلك أصبح الأمر سهلا، وهذا العام، بدأت العمل التطوعي مع فود بوكس، وهي مؤسسة خيرية تقدم عبوات وجبات صحية للعائلات التي تحتاج إلى المساعدة، لقد أصبحت مهتما بفود بوكس ، لأن والدتي متطوعة هناك.

**Presenter** : That sounds like difficult but rewarding work. يبدو هذا عملا صعبا ولكنه عمل مجزٍ

**Rawan** : Volunteering isn't like work. It's so much fun! At Food Box, I'm learning a lot about healthy food and what makes a healthy diet. I love delivering the food boxes and helping the children to be good citizens. Helping children makes me happy.

العمل التطوعي ليس مجرد عمل. إنه ممتع للغاية. في فود بوكس، أنا أتعلم الكثير عن الطعام الصحي وما الذي يجعل النظام الغذائي صحيا. أحب توصيل صناديق الطعام ومساعدة الأطفال على أن يكونوا مواطنين صالحين، مساعدة الأطفال تجعلني أشعر بالسعادة.

**Presenter** : You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to socialize and talk to people you wouldn't usually meet. Volunteering also gives you confidence. It's amazing to see how teenagers grow in confidence when they start volunteering. Fundraising helps charities get the money they need. It's good to give back to the place where you live. My advice to teenagers is "Volunteer and help if you can. You'll enjoy it!"

أنت تتعلم العديد من المهارات الحياتية المهمة عندما تتطوع. تتعلم كيفية التواصل الاجتماعي والتحدث مع الأشخاص الذين لا تقابلهم عادة. كما يمنحك العمل التطوعي الثقة. إنه لأمر مدهش أن نرى كيف تنمو ثقة المراهقين عندما يبدأون العمل التطوعي. جمع التبرعات يساعد المؤسسات الخيرية في الحصول على الأموال التي تحتاجها. من الجيد أن ترد الجميل للمكان الذي تعيش فيه. نصيحتي للمراهقين هي «تطوع وساعد إذا استطعت. سوف تستمتع بذلك!»

# Language Focus

## The Past Simple Tense
زمن الماضي البسيط

### Form التكوين

- **The second form of the verb.** التصريف الثاني للفعل.

### Usage الاستخدام

- **We use the Past Simple Tense to express finished actions in the past.**
نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث انتهت في الماضي.

### 1 Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

1 نضيف (d, ed, ied) إلى الفعل المنتظم.

visit → visited    need → needed

2 إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (e) يُضاف (d) فقط.

love → loved    like → liked

3 إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (y) ويسبقه حرف ساكن نحذف (y) ثم نضيف (ied).

try → tried    study → studied

4 إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (y) ويسبقه حرف متحرك يتم إضافة (ed) للفعل.

play → played    stay → stayed

5 إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوقًا بحرف متحرك واحد نُضاعف الحرف الأخير.

drop → dropped    stop → stopped

### 2 Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

become → became    keep → kept

### Keywords الكلمات الدالة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| yesterday | أمس | last (year / .....) | (العام / .....) الماضي |
| ago | منذ | in the past | في الماضي |
| Once | ذات مرة | in 2015 | في عام (٢٠١٥) أي تاريخ ماضي |

e.g. I visited my grandmother yesterday.
Ali played with his cousin last Saturday.

### Negative النفي

**Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)**

e.g. Rats didn't eat the grain. - I didn't grow up in Cairo.

**Question** السؤال

**(Yes / No) question:** السؤال بـ "هل":

**Did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?**

e.g. Did the Ancient Egyptians only keep cats as pets?
- Yes, they did. - No, they didn't.

**Wh-question:** السؤال بـ "كلمة استفهام":

**Q.W + did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?**

e.g. What did they feed their cats?
Where did he grow up?

## Verb to "be" in the past

**Form** التكوين

**(I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد) + was .....**

e.g. I was at school yesterday.

**(You / We / They / اسم جمع) + were .....**

e.g. They were at school yesterday.

**Negative** النفي

**Subject + (wasn't / weren't) + باقي الجملة**

e.g. I wasn't a student at the local school.
They weren't popular pets.

**Question** السؤال

**(Yes / No) question:** السؤال بـ "هل":

**(Was / Were) + subject + باقي الجملة ?**

e.g. Were there a lot of mummies?
- Yes, there were. - No, there weren't.

**Wh-question:** السؤال بـ "كلمة استفهام":

**Q.W + (was / were) + subject + باقي الجملة ?**

e.g. Which was their favorite animal?

# Prepositions of place

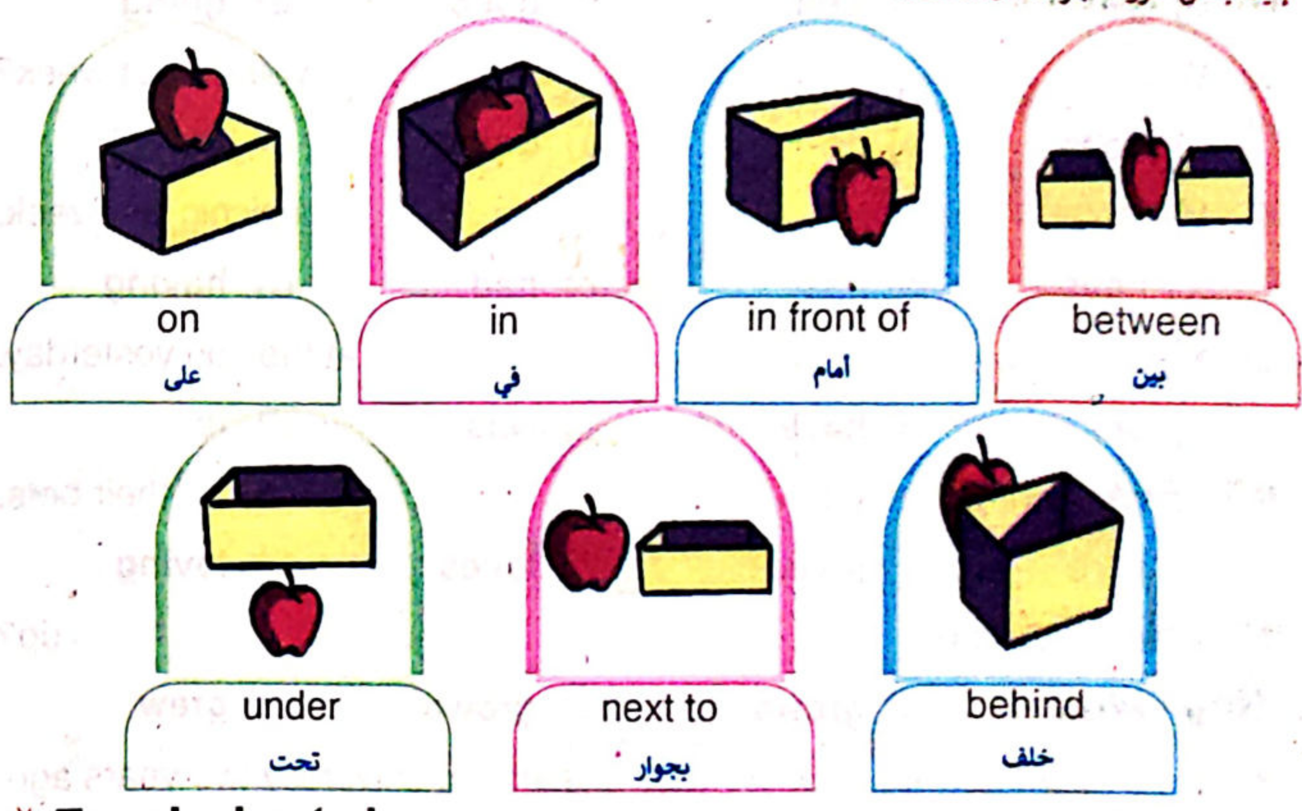
## حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لنخبر عن مكان الأشياء:

e.g. The Ancient Egyptians first found metal **in** the rocks.
They could hunt and grow things **on** the land.

### Here are some common prepositions of place:

إليك بعض حروف جر المكان الشائعة:




### To ask about places:

للسؤال عن الأماكن:




e.g. Where is the cat?
- It's **on** the box.



e.g. Where is the cat?
- It's **in front of** the box.



e.g. Where is the cat?
- It's **between** the boxes.



# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Did you .................................................. a nice weekend?
   a) have  b) has  c) had  d) having
2. I .................................................. to Al-Azhar Park with my friends yesterday.
   a) go  b) went  c) goes  d) going
3. What .................................................. you do last week?
   a) does  b) do  c) doing  d) did
4. We .................................................. a picnic last week.
   a) have  b) has  c) had  d) having
5. I .................................................. at the zoo yesterday.
   a) am  b) have  c) was  d) is
6. The Ancient Egyptians .................................................. their pets.
   a) love  b) loved  c) loves  d) loving
7. Where did you .................................................. up?
   a) grow  b) grows  c) grown  d) grew
8. He .................................................. maths at university two years ago.
   a) studies  b) study  c) studied  d) is studying
9. Rats didn't .................................................. the grain.
   a) ate  b) eat  c) eats  d) eating
10. The chair is in .................................................. of the box.
    a) next  b) near  c) front  d) behind
11. .................................................. is the boy? - In the kitchen.
    a) Where  b) Why  c) What  d) How
12. The girl is .................................................. the curtain.
    a) on  b) in  c) behind  d) next

## 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. They .................................................................... (didn't) popular pets.
2. Did they ............................................................... (kept) cats as pets?
3. Where did she ........................................................ (grew) up?
4. I ........................................................................... (stay) in bed last night.
5. The apple is ......................................................... (behind) to the box.
6. She didn't ............................................................... (arrived) on time.
7. They .................................................................... (buy) a new car last month.
8. She ...................................................................... (isn't) at school last week.
9. The teacher's desk is .............................. (under) the board and the plant.
10. They .................................................... (find) silver in the tomb last year.

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. did - find - they - silver - Where - ?

   ..........................................................................................................

2. you - the - Did - understand - exercise - ?

   ..........................................................................................................

3. She - week - wasn't - school - last - at - .

   ..........................................................................................................

4. board - is - The - under - clock - the - .

   ..........................................................................................................

5. Midas - helped - goat - King - the - .

   ..........................................................................................................

6. What - there - do - you - did - ?

   ..........................................................................................................

7. represented - The - wisdom - ibis - falcons - and - .

   ..........................................................................................................

8. went - a - boat - We - ride - on - .

   ..........................................................................................................

# Intensifiers

المقويات - المعززات

- We use **intensifiers** to give a stronger meaning to **adjectives** and **verbs**.

نستخدم المقويات لإعطاء معنى أقوى للصفات والأفعال.

1. لتقوية الصفة نستخدم (so و really , very) قبل الصفة.

e.g. I was **really / very** good at hiding.

Some skipping games are **so** difficult.

2. لتقوية الفعل نستخدم (really) قبل الفعل.

e.g. I **really** liked playing hopscotch.

3. نستخدم (at all) مع الجمل المنفية وتأتي في نهاية الجملة.

e.g. He **didn't** like skipping **at all**!

4. نستخدم (quite) لجعل الصفة أقل قوة.

e.g. She was **quite** good at football.

## verb + (verb + ing)

**Some verbs are followed by verb + ing:** بعض الأفعال يتبعها (فعل + ing):

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| like يحب | continue يستمر في | love يحب |
| finish ينهي | enjoy يستمتع بـ | imagine يتخيل |
| hate يكره | stop يتوقف عن | prefer يفضل |

e.g. I **enjoy looking** at the market stalls.

I **stopped playing** with my train set a few years ago.

# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I ........................................ liked playing with my cuddly toys.
   a) really b) very c) much d) so
2. This book is not funny ........................................ .
   a) really b) so c) at all d) quite
3. Omar is ........................................ good at football. He always beats me.
   a) quite b) very c) at all d) never
4. Some skipping games are ........................................ difficult. I can't play them.
   a) so b) many c) at all d) lot
5. I ........................................ enjoyed playing marbles with my friends.
   a) very b) so c) really d) at all
6. I don't like playing tennis ........................................ .
   a) so b) at all c) very d) quite
7. Sarah imagined ........................................ in a plane.
   a) fly b) flies c) to fly d) flying
8. I prefer ........................................ with my new toys.
   a) playing b) to play c) play d) played
9. My sister enjoys ........................................ at the market stalls.
   a) look b) looks c) looking d) to look
10. Did you finish ........................................ your homework?
    a) do b) doing c) to do d) did
11. You should stop ........................................ at your sister.
    a) shout b) shouted c) shouting d) to shout
12. I like ........................................ up stories.
    a) making b) makes c) made d) to make

## 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. They finished .................................... (paint) the posters and tidied up.
2. I really enjoyed .................................... (ride) my bike.
3. Nour likes .................................... (play) outside.
4. Adam imagined .................................... (fly) in a rocket.
5. I .................................... (very) liked playing hopscotch.
6. Sarah prefers .................................... (draw) flowers.
7. I love .................................... (read) adventure stories.
8. People should stop .................................... (throw) rubbish in the street.
9. I was .................................... (all) good at football.
10. He didn't like running .................................... (very).

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. board - I - really - playing - like - games - .

....................................................................................................

2. didn't - Asser - train - at all - sets - like - .

....................................................................................................

3. quite - Skateboarding - good - is - .

....................................................................................................

4. Amina - doing - What - like - did - ?

....................................................................................................

5. was - good - I - very - making up - at - stories - .

....................................................................................................

6. he - reading - Does - enjoy - books - adventure - ?

....................................................................................................

# The Past Continuous Tense

زمن الماضي المستمر

## Usage الاستخدام

- **We use the past continuous in stories to say what was happening at a particular time in the past.**

نستخدم الماضي المستمر في القصص لنقول ما كان يحدث في وقت معين في الماضي.

eg. Yesterday afternoon, John was walking his dog.

- **We can also use the past continuous with *when* and the past simple to show when one action interrupted another in the past:**

يمكننا أيضًا استخدام الماضي المستمر مع الرابط when والماضي البسيط لبيان أن حدث ما قطع حدث آخر في الماضي:

eg. I was reading a book when my dad came.

## Form التكوين

**I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + was**
**You / We / They / اسم جمع + were** **+ (v + ing).**

- I was doing my homework yesterday evening.
- We were playing computer games.

## Negative النفي

**I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + wasn't**
**You / We / They / اسم جمع + weren't** **+ (v + ing).**

- He was not watching TV.
- They weren't riding their bikes.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

was not ⟶ wasn't    were not ⟶ weren't

## Question السؤال

### Yes/No question

**Was + (I / he / she / it / اسم مفرد)**
**Were + (you / we / they / اسم جمع)** **+ (v + ing)?**

- Was Ali swimming? - Yes, he was. - No, he wasn't.
- Were they surfing? - Yes, they were. - No, they weren't.

## Wh- question

Q.W + was + (I / he / she / it / اسم مفرد) + (v + ing)?
Q.W + were + (you / we / they / اسم جمع)

- What was she doing? - She was eating.
- What were they doing? - They were playing on the beach.

### Keywords الكلمات الدالة

| | |
|---|---|
| at (5) yesterday في الساعة (الخامسة) أمس | yesterday evening مساء أمس |
| yesterday morning صباح أمس | when عندما |

When + ماضي بسيط , ماضي مستمر

- When we saw a little house, we were walking along the path.

ماضي مستمر + when + ماضي بسيط

- I was watching TV when you called me.

## Sequencing adverbs ظروف التسلسل

**We use sequencing adverbs to say when things happen. They help us to understand the order of events. This makes the text easier to follow.**

نستخدم ظروف التسلسل لنقول متى تحدث الأشياء. فهي تساعدنا في فهم ترتيب الأحداث. وهذا يجعل النص أسهل للمتابعة.

First أولًا   Next التالي   Then ثم   After that بعد ذلك   Finally أخيرًا/ في النهاية

**- Notes to help you to write a story using sequencing adverbs.**

- First, plan your story, and decide what it will be about.

أولاً، خطط لقصتك، وقرر ما الذي ستتناوله.

- Next, write a first draft of your story.

بعد ذلك، اكتب المسودة الأولى لقصتك.

- After that, check and correct your spelling and grammar.

بعد ذلك، قم بالتدقيق والتصحيح الإملائي والنحوي.

- Finally, share it with friends and enjoy!

وأخيراً، قم بمشاركتها مع الأصدقاء واستمتع!

# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Dina .................................... her homework when she got a text message.
   a) is doing  b) was doing  c) will do  d) does
2. They were playing in the park when they .................................... a note.
   a) find  b) finds  c) found  d) have found
3. I .................................... a book when my dad came home.
   a) am reading  b) read  c) was reading  d) reads
4. What were you .................................... ?
   a) do  b) does  c) doing  d) did
5. They .................................... computer games when their brother arrived.
   a) were playing  b) play  c) are playing  d) will play
6. He was playing the piano when his mom .................................... home.
   a) arrive  b) arrived  c) arrives  d) arriving
7. They .................................... to music when the man shouted.
   a) are listening  b) will listen  c) were listening  d) listen
8. Were you .................................... for your exam when the car stopped outside?
   a) study  b) studying  c) studied  d) studies
9. We .................................... in the park when we heard a bang.
   a) were playing  b) are playing  c) play  d) will play
10. Ayman .................................... the bike when the phone rang.
    a) is riding  b) rides  c) was riding  d) rode
11. Hazem was watching a match when his dad .................................... him.
    a) phone  b) phoned  c) was phoning  d) phones
12. Dad was reading the newspaper .................................... Lina came.
    a) when  b) while  c) what  d) why

## 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Yesterday afternoon, John .................................... (walk) his dog.
2. Hazem .............. (watch) a football match when his team scored a goal.
3. Dad was reading a newspaper when Lina .............................. (come).
4. I ............................ (am) reading a story when my mom came home.
5. Ahmed was riding a bike when the phone .............................. (ring).
6. .............. (Are) you looking at your phone when I saw you in the street?
7. I wasn't ............................................ (watch) TV when you called me.
8. We .......................... (walk) along the path when we saw a little house.
9. We ................................ (travel) to the city when Grandma phoned us.
10. I was going home from school when I .............................. (see) Ali.

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. playing - park - in - We - the - were - .

..........................................................................................................

2. to - listening - Were - music - they - ?

..........................................................................................................

3. What - doing - were - you - ?

..........................................................................................................

4. was - games - playing - computer - Ghada - .

..........................................................................................................

5. John - dog - walking - was - his - the park - in - .

..........................................................................................................

6. watching - match - was - football - Hatem - a - .

..........................................................................................................

7. reading - came - when - I - was - my dad - a book - .

..........................................................................................................

8. Fatima - her - doing - Was - homework - ?

..........................................................................................................

## (must / mustn't) يجب أن / يجب ألا



### Form التكوين

**Subject + must / mustn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)**

e.g. We must respect nature.

We mustn't leave trash in the desert.

### Usage الاستخدام

- We use "must" when we talk about something that we have to do or that is important to do.

نستخدم "must" عند الحديث عن شيء يجب أن نقوم به أو من المهم أن نقوم به.

e.g. We must bring a tent.

- We use "mustn't" when we are not allowed to do something.

نستخدم "mustn't" عندما يكون غير مسموح لنا القيام بشيء ما.

e.g. We mustn't swim because there might be crocodiles!

## (If) First Conditional "إذا / لو" الحالة الشرطية الأولى

### Form التكوين

**If + subject + present simple , subject + (will + inf.) ...**

e.g. If people learn more about the environment, they will want to protect it.

**Subject + will + inf. + if + subject + present simple**

e.g. I will buy a car if I have a lot of money.

### Usage الاستخدام

- We use the first conditional to talk about things that are likely to happen in the future.

نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتحدث عن أشياء محتمل حدوثها في المستقبل.

e.g. If tourists stay in simple accommodation, there won't be so many big hotels.



**Note:** will = 'll    will not = won't

e.g. If I am hungry, I'll eat a snack.

If he doesn't leave now, he won't catch the bus.

# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You ............................................ respect nature.
   a) must   b) mustn't   c) don't have to   d) shouldn't
2. You ............................................ scare birds or animals.
   a) must   b) should   c) have to   d) mustn't
3. You ............................................ leave trash in the desert.
   a) must   b) mustn't   c) have to   d) should
4. If I have an important exam, I ............................ study for it.
   a) would   b) could   c) will   d) might
5. If you ..................... to bed late tonight, you won't get up early tomorrow.
   a) go   b) goes   c) went   d) was going
6. If you learn to bake, you ............................ save a lot of money.
   a) won't   b) shouldn't   c) will   d) mustn't
7. You ..................... walk to school today because there are no buses.
   a) shouldn't   b) mustn't   c) don't have to   d) must
8. You ............................................ walk in the desert when it's hot.
   a) must   b) mustn't   c) should   d) have to
9. If I am hungry, I ............................................ a snack.
   a) will eat   b) could eat   c) would eat   d) might eat
10. When we go camping, we ............................ take a tent with us.
    a) must   b) mustn't   c) shouldn't   d) couldn't
11. You mustn't ............................................ in the lake.
    a) swims   b) swam   c) swim   d) swimming
12. If it ............................................ sunny, we'll go to the beach.
    a) is   b) be   c) will be   d) was

## 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. You ........................................ (must) leave trash in the desert.
2. You must ........................................ (bringing) a tent.
3. You ........................................ (must) scare the birds or animals.
4. You ........................ (mustn't) be careful in the natural environment.
5. If he ........................ (didn't) leave now, he won't catch the bus.
6. If she feels thirsty, she ........................ (would) drink some water.
7. If we .................... (went) to El Agami beach, we will swim in the sea.
8. If you go to bed late, you .................... (don't) get up early tomorrow.
9. You mustn't ........................ (walking) in the desert when it's hot.
10. You ................ (must) swim here because there might be crocodiles.

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. mustn't - birds - animals - You - or - scare - .

   ........................................................................................................

2. in - trash - You - desert - leave - the - mustn't - .

   ........................................................................................................

3. If - hungry, - eat - he - will - a snack - he - is - .

   ........................................................................................................

4. thirsty - she - water, - drink - is - If - she - some - will - .

   ........................................................................................................

5. If - he - now, - he - catch - doesn't - the bus - leave - won't - .

   ........................................................................................................

6. mustn't - hot - it's - walk - You - the - in - desert - when - .

   ........................................................................................................

7. a - bring - must - We - tent - .

   ........................................................................................................

8. mustn't - your - forget - You - homework - .

   ........................................................................................................

# Infinitives of purpose

**(to + inf.) (للتعبير عن الغرض)**

نستخدم " المصدر + to " لبيان الغرض من القيام بالأشياء.

e.g. We wear gloves to protect our hands.

نستخدم أيضًا " المصدر + to " لكي نجيب عن الأسئلة التي تبدأ بـ " Why ".

e.g. Why do you wear gloves on a beach clean-up? To protect my hands.

# Adverbs

**الأحوال / الظروف**

1. **An Adverb is a word that describes a verb.** (الحال / الظرف) هو كلمة تصف الفعل.

   e.g. He waited patiently. - They walked quickly.

2. **Form**

   يتكون (الحال / الظرف) بإضافة " ly " إلى معظم الصفات.

   quick → quickly　　slow → slowly

   الصفات التي تنتهي بساكن وبعده "y" نحول "y" إلى "ily".

   happy → happily　　angry → angrily

| Adjective | | Adverb | | Adjective | | Adverb | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| beautiful | جميل | beautifully | بجمال | angry | غضبان | angrily | بغضب |
| quiet | هادئ | quietly | بهدوء | happy | سعيد | happily | بسعادة |
| kind | عطوف | kindly | بعطف | patient | صبور | patiently | بصبر |

3. **Adverb normally comes after the verb.** الحال يأتي بعد الفعل.

   e.g. He shouted angrily.

4. **Adverbs can come before or after a verb and its object. The adverb can't come between the verb and its object.**

   يمكن أن تأتي الأحوال قبل أو بعد فعل ومفعوله. ولا يمكن أن تأتي بين الفعل ومفعوله.

   e.g. She quickly learned the rules. (✔) - She learned quickly the rules. (✖)

5. **Some adverbs are irregular.** بعض الأحوال غير منتظمة.

| Adjective | | Adverb | |
|---|---|---|---|
| good | جيد | well | بطريقة جيدة |
| fast | سريع | fast | بسرعة |
| hard | صعب / شاق | hard | بجد |

e.g. He is a fast runner. He runs fast.

# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Hoda isn't very ............................ at basketball.
   a) good b) well c) quickly d) lazy
2. Donia learned how to play chess ............................ .
   a) quick b) well c) good d) sad
3. My friend Sherif plays volleyball very ............................ .
   a) good b) bad c) clever d) well
4. Gameela ............................ picked up the cat.
   a) gentle b) bad c) gently d) slow
5. Nagwa and Lama played ............................ in the park for an hour.
   a) happy b) happily c) sad d) bad
6. Safia is using a mobile to ............................ her friend.
   a) calling b) calls c) call d) called
7. My daughter went to the club ............................ meet her friends.
   a) for b) on c) to d) at
8. Seif bought a pen to ............................ with.
   a) write b) wrote c) written d) writing
9. I listen to the news ............................ know what's going on.
   a) in b) on c) at d) to
10. I go to school to ............................ .
    a) learning b) learn c) learnt d) learns

## 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I listen carefully to ............................ (understood).
2. The tortoise walks ............................ (slow).
3. She spoke ............................ (gentle) to her guests.
4. They went to the library ............................ (for) borrow books.

5. He runs .................................................................................. (quick).
6. I slept early to .......................................................... (getting) up early.
7. She speaks .................................................................................. (loud).
8. I tidied my room to ................................................ (helped) my mother.
9. We speak .................................................................................. (quiet).
10. I study hard ........................................................................ (for) succeed.

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. to - a picture - Lama - the exhibition - painted - put - in - .

..............................................................................................................

2. lemonade - to - They - the market - sell - make - in - .

..............................................................................................................

3. by bus - her cousins - see - Farah - to - traveled - .

..............................................................................................................

4. some candy - bought - the movie - to - We - during - eat - .

..............................................................................................................

5. choose - something - to - We - support - had to - our community - .

..............................................................................................................

6. his - quickly - Adam - meal - ate - friends - with - his - .

..............................................................................................................

7. our charity - money to - Their - donated - kindly - cousins - .

..............................................................................................................

8. shouting angrily - heard - I - two - people - today - the street - in - .

..............................................................................................................

9. quickly - rules - She - learned - the - .

..............................................................................................................

10. came first - because she - race - in the - Dalia - ran fast - .

..............................................................................................................

# Unit (7) Amazing artifacts

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| artifacts | قطع أثرية / مصنوعات يدوية | trade | تجارة / يتاجر |
| preserve | يحفظ | metal | معدن |
| durable | متين | weapon | سلاح |
| fascinating | رائع / جذاب / مذهل | economy | اقتصاد |
| granite | جرانيت | trip over | يطأ على / يدوس على |
| glass | زجاج | hug | يحتضن |
| clay | صلصال / طين / فخار | tears | دموع |
| gold | ذهب | stone | حجر |
| baboon | قرد البابون | iron | حديد |
| monkey | قرد | meteorite | حجر نيزكي |
| rat | فأر - جرذ | dagger | خنجر |
| crocodile | تمساح | precious | ثمين |
| hippo | فرس النهر | mine | منجم / يستخرج معادن |
| falcon | صقر | copper | نحاس |
| ibis | طائر أبو منجل | bronze | معدن البرونز |
| snake | ثعبان | craftsmen | حرفيين |
| grain | حبوب | mummify | يحنط |
| adore | يُحب بشدة / يعشق | statue | تمثال |
| wisdom | حكمة | melt | يذوب / ينصهر |

## Pronunciation

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| bear | دُب | share | يُشارك | pair | زوج من |
| pear | كمثرى | rare | نادر | hair | شعر |
| tear | يمزق | there | هناك | air | هواء |
| wear | يرتدي | | | | |

## Prepositions of place

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| in | في | under | تحت | between | بين |
| on | على | behind | خلف | next to | بجوار |
| in front of | امام | | | | |



## The Past Simple Tense
زمن الماضي البسيط

**Form** التكوين

- **The second form of the verb.**

يتكون الماضي البسيط من التصريف الثاني للفعل. (إضافة d, ed, ied للفعل المنتظم والفعل غير المنتظم يحفظ).

e.g. He dropped the glass. - She became a teacher.

**Negative** النفي

**Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)**

e.g. Rats didn't eat the grain. - I didn't grow up in Cairo.

**Question** السؤال

**(Yes / No) question:** **Did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?**

e.g. Did the Ancient Egyptians only keep cats as pets?
- Yes, they did. - No, they didn't.

**Wh-question:** **Q.W + did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?**

e.g. What did they feed their cats?

## Verb to be in the past

**Form** التكوين

**Subject + (was / were) + باقي الجملة**

e.g. There was a cat here.

**Negative** النفي

**Subject + (wasn't / weren't) + باقي الجملة**

e.g. There weren't popular pets.

**Question** السؤال

**(Yes / No) question:** **(Was / Were) + subject + باقي الجملة ?**

e.g. Were there a lot of mummies?
- Yes, there were. - No, there weren't.

**Wh-question:** **Q.W + (was / were) + subject + باقي الجملة ?**

e.g. Which was their favorite animal?

# Activities on Unit (7)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Ancient Egyptians loved birds especially .................................. .
   a) hens b) ducks c) falcons d) turkeys
2. Falcons and the ibis represented .................................. .
   a) money b) wisdom c) happiness d) sadness
3. There are .................................. of mummified ibises in Saqqara.
   a) tens b) hundreds c) a few d) thousands
4. These pets were also important in the .................................. .
   a) afterlife b) before life c) at life d) behind life

## Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. One of the most beautiful artifacts is Tutankhamun's ..................................
   a) mask b) shoes c) head d) leg
2. The mask is made of ..................................
   a) silver b) bronze c) copper d) gold
3. Under his chin is a .................................. beard.
   a) fat b) thin c) big d) huge
4. There is also a .................................. on the top of his head.
   a) bird b) cat c) snake d) monkey

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Ancient Egyptians made the pyramids from .................................. .
   a) granite b) glass c) wood d) cotton
2. Gold is valuable and .................................. .
   a) weak b) easy c) durable d) cold
3. A hot and dry climate helps to .................................. artifacts.
   a) destroy b) preserve c) damage d) cut
4. The ancient Egyptians .................................. cats. They loved them very much.
   a) hated b) disliked c) ate d) adored
5. " .................. " means seeds from plants used to make flour and bread.
   a) Grain b) Wood c) Glass d) Copper

6. A .................. is an object made of stone to look like a person or animal.
   a) grain  b) statue  c) mummy  d) wisdom
7. She cried. Her .................. fell on her cheeks.
   a) hair  b) wears  c) tears  d) pears
8. The Ancient Egyptians .................. with other countries.
   a) traded  b) studied  c) hated  d) disliked
9. The Ancient Egyptians used metal to make tools and .................. .
   a) glass  b) paper  c) cotton  d) weapons
10. I have a new .................. of black shoes.
   a) pair  b) pear  c) bear  d) hair
11. Gold is a .................. metal.
   a) precious  b) ugly  c) dirty  d) useless
12. They .................. iron from the ground.
   a) wore  b) mined  c) teared  d) grew
13. They killed the man with a .................. .
   a) paper  b) water  c) dagger  d) air

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

after - pets - pests - before - adored

The Ancient Egyptians loved animals. They kept many as 1).................. They particularly 2).......... cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked 3).............. them and kept them safe. They were also good pets because they cleaned themselves and kept the houses free of 4).................. like rats and snakes.

## Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

weapons - harder - hunt - Metal - water

The Ancient Egyptians traded with other countries. 1).................. was one thing they traded. Metal was 2).................. than rocks, and they could melt and form it into different shapes. They used metal to make tools and 3).................. , so that they could 4).................. over the land, and grow food.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ago. Before iron, they worked with copper and bronze. Amazingly, some of their early iron was from meteorites. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb from a meteorite. They also mined iron from the ground. But they found it quite difficult to use because it needs a very hot fire to melt, which often wasn't possible. They thought iron was special because they believed it came from the sky (because of the meteorites). They called it "the metal of heaven". For them, iron was more precious than gold because it was rarer.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than ............ years ago.
   a) 500 b) 5,000 c) 50 d) 50,000
2. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made a famous ...... for Tutankhamun's tomb.
   a) hammer b) fork c) dagger d) spoon
3. Iron needs a very ........................................................ fire to melt.
   a) cold b) cool c) hot d) warm

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. What metals did the Ancient Egyptians use before iron?

..........................................................................................

5. Why did the Ancient Egyptians think iron was special?

..........................................................................................

##  Read the text and answer the questions.

Coffee was discovered in Ethiopia in the eleventh century. At first, the leaves of the coffee plant were boiled in water. The drink was used as medicine. Coffee wasn't planted outside Ethiopia until the fourteenth century. For 300 years, the original recipe from Ethiopia was used. Later, coffee became popular in many places. The coffee beans were cooked over a fire and made into a powder. This was mixed with water and cooked slowly on a fire ashes. This recipe was taken all over the world.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Coffee was first planted in .......................................................... .
   a) Egypt b) Ethiopia c) London d) China
2. The underlined word "recipe" means a way of ........................ something.
   a) keeping b) sweeping c) cooking d) cleaning
3. The underlined word "drink" refers to ........................................................ .
   a) coffee b) soap c) tea d) water

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. What's the main idea of the text?

..........................................................................................................

5. How was coffee used at first?

..........................................................................................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. you - to - What - like - would - know - ?

   ..........................................................................................................
2. animals - loved - The - Egyptians - Ancient - .

   ..........................................................................................................
3. Did - a - weekend - have - nice - you - ?

   ..........................................................................................................
4. went - Park - with - I - Al-Azhar - my - to - family - .

   ..........................................................................................................
5. on - ride - We - boat - went - a - .

   ..........................................................................................................
6. fell - and - my - over - I - hurt - arm - .

   ..........................................................................................................
7. in - up - grew - Alexandria - He - .

   ..........................................................................................................
8. The - are - the - on - books - shelves - .

   ..........................................................................................................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. The Ancient Egyptians .................................................. (love) their pets.
2. At university, I .................................................. (study) math last year.
3. I didn't .................................................. (grew) up in Cairo.
4. Did you .................................................. (had) a nice weekend?
5. I .................................................. (go) to the park with my family yesterday.
6. The book is .................................................. (near) to the ruler.
7. The pen is in .................................................. (behind) of the box.
8. What did you .................................................. (did) in the park?
9. I .................................................. (am) at the cinema last week.
10. .................................................. (Did) there a lot of mummies?

## 7 Punctuate the following.

- The Ancient egyptians loved birds
- did you grow in Alexandria

## 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Animals in Ancient Egypt

**Guiding elements:**

(pets - cats - looked after - pests)

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

Iron in Ancient Egypt

**Guiding elements:**

(iron - mined - difficult to use - sky)

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

# Unit (8) Toys and games

## Vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| marbles | البلي | doll's house | بيت الدمية | skateboard | لوح التزلج |
| cuddly toy | لعبة محشوة | rollerblades | حذاء التزلج (زلاجات) | bricks | طوب |
| skipping | نط الحبل | images = graphics | صور - رسومات | modern | حديث |
| train set | لعبة القطار | games console | وحدة تحكم ألعاب | adventure | مغامرة |
| market | سوق | although - though | بالرغم من - ومع ذلك | creative | مبدع - إبداعي |
| posters | ملصقات | hide and seek | الاستغماية | stall | كشك - دكانة |
| description | وصف | video games | ألعاب الفيديو | parents | الوالدان |
| outside | بالخارج | action figure | شخصية حركية | board game | لعبة لوحية |
| machine | آلة | hopscotch | لعبة المربعات (الحجلة) | amazing | مذهل |

## Pronunciation

**"gh"** sounds like **/f/** — تنطق "gh" مثل صوت /f/.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| draughts | لعبة الداما | laughter | الضحك | tough | متين - قاسٍ |
| cough | كحة / يكح | laugh | يضحك | enough | كافٍ |

**"gh"** is silent in most words. — تكون "gh" صامتة "لا تنطق" في معظم الكلمات.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| bought | اشترى | drought | جفاف | high | مرتفع - عالٍ |
| thought | اعتقد / فكّر | eight | رقم ثمانية | daughter | ابنة |
| night | ليلة | brought | أحضر | | |

## Language

**1) Intensifiers:** (really / very / so + adj.) (really + verb) (Negative نفي + at all)

e.g. I was **really / very** good at hiding.

I didn't like skipping **at all**. - I **really** enjoy video games.

**2) Verbs followed by (verb + -ing):**

(continue - finish - hate - imagine - like - prefer - stop)

e.g. I enjoy **playing** football.
I prefer **making** up stories.

# Activities on Unit (8)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My favorite toy was my .................................................. .
   a) cuddly toy b) skateboard c) train set d) bike
2. I played in the .................................................. with my friends.
   a) school b) club c) park d) street
3. My skateboard had black, with .................................................. stickers on it.
   a) red b) yellow c) white d) orange and yellow
4. I had to wear a .................................................. and pads.
   a) shoe b) helmet c) cap d) shirt

## Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I visited my .................................................. last week.
   a) uncle b) grandma c) grandpa d) grandmother
2. I could go really fast on my ..................................................
   a) skateboard b) rollerblades c) train set d) bike
3. My toys were ..................................................
   a) big b) small c) old d) new
4. My sister had a ..................................................
   a) cuddly toy b) doll's house c) skateboard d) puppy

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I always visit my uncle .................................................. the weekend.
   a) in b) on c) up d) by
2. I had an action .................................................. . I loved playing with it.
   a) player b) finger c) figure d) fighter
3. I didn't have a .................................................. set when I was younger.
   a) car b) train c) ship d) bus
4. You can go quiet fast on ..................................................
   a) stall b) action figure c) rollerblades d) hopscotch
5. My little sister always takes her favorite .................................................. toy to bed.
   a) train b) cuddly c) action d) doll

6. At school, we use chalk to make a .................................... game.
   a) beard b) hopscotch c) skipping d) football
7. There are some wooden toys on the toy ....................................
   a) stall b) still c) sail d) ship
8. My brother is really good at .................................... and seek.
   a) ride b) hide c) run d) swim
9. Video games are great when they're .................................... .
   a) bad b) difficult c) creative d) old
10. A .................................... is when there isn't enough rain.
   a) drought b) draught c) flood d) desert
11. A .................................... is used to make a boat move.
   a) sale b) stall c) sail d) snail
12. The elephant has a long .................................... .
   a) head b) trunk c) button d) sail
13. I like .................................... . I'm very good at hiding.
   a) running b) hide and seek c) climbing d) skipping
14. " .................................... " means to try something.
   a) Have a go b) Have a look c) Make up d) Beat

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**hopscotch - interesting - toys - plays - seek**

I started a project on the weekend. It was about 1).................... and games. It's really 2).................... I thought hide and 3).................... was fun. I also liked 4).................... I was quiet good at it, but I preferred skipping. My sister practiced a lot. We often play together.

## Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**house - making - home - really - imagination**

When Sara was little, she 1).................... liked games that used a lot of 2).................... She was very good at 3).................... up stories. She had a doll's 4)...................., some cuddly toys, and some action figures. She enjoyed playing with them.



## Read the text and answer the questions.

My favorite games are video games. I don't play them very often, though. I play for about an hour on the weekend. It's fun! My favorite games are ones where you build cities. I've made a really big city using different bricks. It has animals and plants in it, too. I like these games because you can be creative and make something new. Some of the images in modern video games are amazing. I've got a new games console, which I share with my sister. She enjoys playing adventure games, where you can go to different places to find something important or solve a problem. They can be difficult but I think they can be fun, too, because they're so exciting.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. I play video games for .................................................. on the weekend.
   a) **30 hours** b) **60 minutes** c) **four hours** d) **2 hours**
2. The word "images" means ..................................................
   a) **stickers** b) **games** c) **graphics** d) **dolls**
3. My sister likes .................................................. games.
   a) **cartoon** b) **adventure** c) **puzzle** d) **funny**

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. What are your favorite games?

..................................................

5. What do you think of adventure games?

..................................................



## Read the text and answer the questions.

One day, Fares and Ramy were playing hopscotch in the school yard. They were drawing squares using different colored chalk when their friend Magdy came to talk to them. "What are you playing?" asked Magdy. "It's hopscotch!" said Fares. "Do you want to play?" "How do you play it?" asked Magdy. "It's very easy," said Ramy.", First, you throw this rock onto the squares. Next, you see which square it is in. Then you hop to the end of the squares and back, but you have to jump over the square with your rock." "Great! I'd love to have a go!" said Magdy.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The children used colored .................................... to draw squares.
   a) pens b) pencils c) crayons d) chalk
2. "Have a go" means to .................................... something.
   a) play b) try c) beat d) leave
3. Playing hopscotch isn't .................................... at all.
   a) easy b) bad c) difficult d) good

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. What's the main idea of the text?

....................................................................................................

5. Where were the children playing?

....................................................................................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. loved - with - I - playing - action - my - figures - .

....................................................................................................

2. didn't - board - We - games - very - play - often - .

....................................................................................................

3. marbles - Nadia - pretty - very - some - has - .

....................................................................................................

4. did - enjoy - What - you - playing - games - ?

....................................................................................................

5. was - good - I - making up - very - at - stories - .

....................................................................................................

6. laugh - when - We - play - we - draughts - .

....................................................................................................

7. is - favorite - What - your - game - ?

....................................................................................................

8. stopped - with my - I - playing - set - train - .

....................................................................................................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I ............................................................ (very) liked playing football.
2. This toy is not interesting ............................................................ (quite).
3. My dad enjoys ............................................................ (make) up stories.
4. Sarah prefers ............................................................ (play) with her dolls.
5. Shimaa ............................................................ (quite) enjoys playing marbles.
6. We imagined ............................................................ (be) in a plane over the city.
7. Does your brother love ............................................................ (read) stories?
8. I don't like listening to music ............................................................ (very).
9. Did you finish ............................................................ (to do) your homework?
10. I think tennis is ............................................................ (so) good, but I prefer football.

## 7 Punctuate the following.

- what's your favorite toy
- sarah wasn't good at running

## 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Your favorite toy

**Guiding elements:**

(skateboard - stickers)

............................................................

............................................................

............................................................

Different games

**Guiding elements:**

(skipping - hopscotch)

............................................................

............................................................

............................................................

# Unit (9) What's the story?

## Vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| setting | المكان والزمان | message | رسالة | reply | يرد / الرد |
| moral | مغزى - الدرس المستفاد | surf | يركب الأمواج | story | قصة |
| narrator | راوي | grandparents | الأجداد | bottle | زجاجة |
| ending | خاتمة - نهاية | sheep | أغنام | weekend | عطلة نهاية الأسبوع |
| beginning | بداية | shepherd | راعي | villager | قروي |
| characters | الشخصيات | coast | ساحل | boat | قارب |
| events | أحداث | sailing | الإبحار | excited | متحمس |
| review | مقال نقدي | favorite | مفضل | later | فيما بعد - لاحقًا |
| man | رجل | things | أشياء | plane | طائرة |
| journey | رحلة | work | يعمل | travel | يسافر |

## Pronunciation

| /w/ sound | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| water | ماء | walk | يمشى |
| wolf | ذئب | whisper | يهمس |
| wave | موجة | white | أبيض |
| west | غرب | whale | حوت |

## Language

### The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضي المستمر

- نستخدم الماضي المستمر ليدل على شئ كان يحدث في وقت معين في الماضي.

eg. Yesterday afternoon, John was walking his dog.

- يمكننا أيضًا استخدام الماضي المستمر لبيان أن حدثًا ما قطع حدثًا آخر.

ماضي بسيط + when + ماضي مستمر

eg. I was reading a book when my dad came home.

### Sequencing adverbs ظروف التسلسل

First أولًا Next التالي Then ثم After that بعد ذلك Finally أخيرًا

# Activities on Unit (9)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ali and I were playing in the ........................................ .
   a) forest b) street c) river d) lake
2. It was a ........................................ afternoon.
   a) bad b) terrible c) cold d) lovely
3. We were hoping to see some interesting animals and ........................ .
   a) stones b) boys c) crocodiles d) birds
4. Suddenly we saw a little ........................................ in the distance.
   a) cave b) house c) hut d) cell

## Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Tom's grandparents lived by the ........................................ .
   a) river b) sky c) sea d) ocean
2. The beach near their house was ........................................ and beautiful.
   a) quiet b) noisy c) crowded d) dirty
3. They swam, surfed and played games on the ........................................
   a) mud b) dirt c) dust d) sand
4. Tom saw a glass ........................................ in the water.
   a) knife b) bottle c) spoon d) cup

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The ........................................ of the story is "kindness is everything".
   a) character b) moral c) setting d) plural
2. The main ........................................ was a bit boring - I didn't like him.
   a) moral b) setting c) place d) character
3. The ........................................ is the person who tells you the story.
   a) setting b) moral c) narrator d) listener
4. In the ........................................, we find out why the man was sad.
   a) ending b) setting c) character d) narrator
5. The ........................................ is London in 1965.
   a) sitting b) setting c) moral d) character

6. Let's write a .................................... of one of Goha's stories.
 a) view  b) interview  c) review  d) color

7. The .................................... ate the sheep.
 a) cat  b) rat  c) mouse  d) wolf

8. My uncle is a .................................... He has a farm with a lot of animals.
 a) villager  b) carpenter  c) baker  d) teacher

9. Can you work .................................... your own?
 a) with  b) at  c) in  d) on

10. The setting is in the .................... where there are animals and plants.
 a) city  b) town  c) countryside  d) space

11. The story is .................................... All people like it.
 a) popular  b) boring  c) bad  d) terrible

12. We go to the .................................... to buy vegetables.
 a) baker's  b) library  c) market  d) aquarium

13. He sent a .................................... to my message.
 a) replay  b) reply  c) apply  d) email

14. My favorite .................................... is blue.
 a) subject  b) day  c) color  d) sport

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**characters - market - journey - flight - setting**

I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories. The one about a man who goes to the 1).................. with his son and a donkey. The 2).................. is the countryside, many years ago. Two of the 3).................. – the man and his son – take turns riding the donkey because it's a long 4).................. .

## Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**moral - popular - example - bad - different**

I loved reading Goha's stories. His stories are 1).................. all over the world. But he's known by 2).................. names. For 3).................., in Sudan, he's Jawha. In Algeria, he's Jeha, and in Morocco, he's Jha. All the stories have a 4).................. that Goha wants to teach us.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

A boy named John was once taking care of some sheep not far from a forest. Nearby was a village. One day, he thought he would have some fun, and he cried out, "The wolf is coming! The wolf is coming!" The men came running to save the boy from the wolf. As they saw nothing, they went home again and left John laughing. John cried out again the next day, "The wolf! The wolf!" The men came again. Again, they saw no wolf, so they shook their heads and went back. On the third day, the wolf came. John cried, "Help! Help! The wolf! The wolf!" Not a single man came to help him. The wolf broke into the flock and ate the sheep. John felt very sorry that he had deceived his friends and neighbors.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. People shook their heads because they found ........................ wolf.
   a) no  b) one  c) two  d) a lot of
2. The boy felt ........................ that he had deceived his friends.
   a) happy  b) glad  c) sorry  d) good
3. The wolf came and ........................ the sheep.
   a) ate  b) played  c) laughed  d) smiled

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. What was the boy taking care of?

..............................................................................................

5. Why did the men come running?

..............................................................................................



## Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Kareem. I have got two brothers and three sisters. My father is an old farmer. My mother is a housewife. She spends all her time cooking and cleaning the house. My father and mother work day and night to help us live happily. They bring us up to love our country Egypt. We live in a nice house on the farm. My father grows a lot of vegetables. He also keeps some animals and birds. In my school, I have got a lot of friends. My school day begins at eight o'clock in the morning. After school, I usually help my father. I love looking after animals and birds. I like to study farming because I want to grow the main crops on our farm.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The word "farming" means ................................................ .
   a) weaving b) growing crops c) making clothes d) playing music

2. Kareem's mother works at ................................................ .
   a) home b) school c) bank d) company

3. The underlined word "They" refers to ................................................ .
   a) father b) birds c) animals d) his parents

B) Answer the following questions.

4. How many persons are there in Kareem's family?

................................................................................................

5. Why do you think Kareem like to study farming?

................................................................................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. by - sea - Tom's - lived - the - grandparents - .

................................................................................................

2. Let's - the bottle - the - put - in - trash - .

................................................................................................

3. was - like - the - What - weather - ?

................................................................................................

4. is - character - the - main - Who - ?

................................................................................................

5. What - story - the - is - moral - the - of - ?

................................................................................................

6. the piano - playing - when - mom - He - arrived - was - .

................................................................................................

7. house - grandparents' - went - Tom - to - his - .

................................................................................................

8. your - games - are - What - favorite - ?

................................................................................................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. She ................................ (do) her homework when she got a message.
2. We were playing computer games when Ali ................................ (arrive).
3. Yesterday afternoon, Adam ................................ (is walking) his dog.
4. They ................................ (play) in the park when they found a note.
5. I was reading a book when my dad ................................ (comes) home.
6. Were you ................................ (look) at your phone when I saw you?
7. I wasn't watching TV when you ................................ (call) me.
8. Dad ................................ (read) a newspaper when Lina came.
9. Ayman ................................ (ride) a bike when his phone rang.
10. Hazem .................. (watch) a football match when Egypt scored a goal.

## 7 Punctuate the following.

- fatima was doing her homework
- where does Ahmed live

## 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

How to make Salatet Zabadee

**Guiding elements:**

(First - cucmber - yogurt)

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

A beginning of a story

**Guiding elements:**

(forest - animals - house - distance)

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

# Unit (10) Free as a bird

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| successful | ناجح | camp | يخيم - يعسكر |
| similar | متشابه | coral reefs | الشعاب المرجانية |
| real | حقيقي | protected area | منطقة محمية |
| sensible | عاقل / حكيم - معقول | tourists | السياح |
| eco-tourism | السياحة البيئية | damage | يتلف / يضر |
| sustainable | مستدام (ملائم للبيئة) | pelican | بجعة |
| ideal | مثالي | kingfisher | طائر الرفراف |
| respect | يحترم | swift | طائر السنونو / السمامة |
| simple | بسيط | eagle | نسر |
| accommodation | أماكن إقامة / سكن | migrate | يهاجر |
| scuba dive | يغوص تحت الماء | close to | قريب من |
| wildlife | الحياة البرية | desert | صحراء |
| mountains | الجبال | forest | غابة |
| habitat | موطن - بيئة | space | مساحة فارغة |

## Activities

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| hiking | التنزه سيرًا على الأقدام | visiting beaches | زيارة الشواطئ |
| snorkeling | الغطس بأنبوب التنفس | cooking outdoors | الطهي بالخارج |
| watching movies | مشاهدة الأفلام | traveling on a river | التنقل عبر النهر |
| taking photos | التقاط الصور | taking photos underwater | التقاط الصور تحت الماء |
| going to restaurants | الذهاب للمطاعم | wildlife-watching | مشاهدة الحياة البرية |

## Pronunciation

| Two syllables | Three syllables |
| --- | --- |
| weather | flamingo |
| falcon | successful |
| careful | pelican |

## Grammar

### Necessity الضرورة والإلزام

**must + inf. المصدر يجب أن..**

تستخدم للتعبير عن الضرورة لعمل شيء ما

e.g. You **must** protect the environment.

**mustn't + inf. المصدر يجب ألا..**

تستخدم للتعبير عن عدم السماح بعمل شيء ما

e.g. You **mustn't** smoke here.

## (If) First Conditional "إذا / لو" الحالة الشرطية الأولى

### Form التكوين

**If + subject + present simple , subject + (will + inf.) ...**

e.g. **If** people **learn** more about the environment, they **will want** to protect it.

### Usage الاستخدام

- **We use the first conditional to talk about things that are likely to happen in the future.**

تستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتحدث عن أشياء محتمل حدوثها في المستقبل.

e.g. **If** tourists **stay** in simple accommodation, there **won't be** so many big hotels.

# Activities on Unit (10)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Ras Mohammed National Park is on the .................................... Sea.
   a) Red  b) Black  c) Dead  d) White
2. This area is on the Sinai .................................................................... .
   a) River  b) Ocean  c) Sea  d) Peninsula
3. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba ..................... .
   a) fly  b) dive  c) ride  d) drive
4. You can see coral ............................................................ and lots of fish.
   a) roofs  b) flats  c) reefs  d) walls

## Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Fares is going to see some beautiful ............................................................ .
   a) animals  b) caves  c) birds  d) cars
2. He will visit quiet beaches on a small ............................................................ .
   a) car  b) bike  c) boat  d) bus
3. The sea in this area is very ............................................................ .
   a) popular  b) dirty  c) dusty  d) ugly
4. It will be a ............................................................................................ day.
   a) calm  b) quiet  c) busy  d) free

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If something is .................... , it is a good idea that someone has thought about carefully.
   a) terrible  b) sensible  c) hard  d) easy
2. If something is ............................................................ , it happens and is true.
   a) false  b) wrong  c) real  d) unreal
3. A ............................................................ person tries hard not to make mistakes.
   a) careful  b) mad  c) crazy  d) careless
4. When two things are ............................................, they might look the same.
   a) different  b) various  c) bad  d) similar
5. Someone who is ................................... tries to do something, and does it.
   a) loser  b) successful  c) careless  d) mad

6. When people ............................ the environment, they want to protect it.
   a) respect b) destroy c) damage d) harm
7. If you go bird-watching, you mustn't get too ...................... to the birds.
   a) far b) wide c) close d) top
8. Eco-tourism is more ..................... than vacations which don't care about the environment.
   a) similar b) sustainable c) easy d) good
9. Many birds ............................................ to find warmer weather in winter.
   a) respect b) study c) swim d) migrate
10. The proverb says "The early bird .......................................... the worm.".
   a) plays b) catches c) watches d) makes
11. Tourists come to Ras Mohammed to Scuba ...........................................
   a) fly b) dive c) swim d) drive
12. " ................................................................................ " means perfect or excellent.
   a) Ideal b) Respect c) Bad d) Terrible
13. " ................................" is living in a place where you have what you need.
   a) Food b) Accommodation c) Clothes d) Sustainable
14. I like ........................................................................................ photos.
   a) going b) making c) swimming d) taking

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**safari - snorkeling - eco-tourism - flying - historical**

Egypt is an amazing country. There are many 1)................ places to visit, as well as stores, markets, and museums. People can go 2)..................... in the Red Sea, go on a desert 3)........................., climb mountains, or sail on the Nile. So, tourism is important – but 4)..................... is becoming very popular, too.

## Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**Lake - market - flocks - Nile - Coasts**

Many water birds migrate to Egypt. You can often see large 1)...................... of birds such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean 2)......................, as well as on the 3)................. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. 4)............................ Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

In the early morning today, two young men were fishing in a small boat when the weather suddenly changed. The sky turned grey and it became very windy. During the bad storm, the two men fell into the water. A man, Mr Hamdi was walking by the sea at that time. He was very brave. He jumped into the sea and rescued the two men. Mr Hamdi has lived in that area for 30 years. He said that he hadn't seen such a bad storm since he was a little boy.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Two young men were fishing in a ........................ .
   a) **big boat** b) **small boat** c) **big ship** d) **small ship**
2. Mr Hamdi lived in that area for ........................ years.
   a) **fifty** b) **forty** c) **thirty** d) **twenty**
3. The two young men were fishing in the ........................ .
   a) **morning** b) **afternoon** c) **evening** d) **night**

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. What happened during the bad storm?

   ..............................................................................

5. What was Mr Hamdi doing during the bad storm?

   ..............................................................................



## Read the text and answer the questions.

Our exams finished a week ago. My friend Ayman asked me to recommend a library to go to together. I recommended the Public Library in our city. I recommended it because it is very big and quiet. Moreover, it is near our houses, so, we would go on foot. The most important reason that made me recommend this library is that we can find all the books we need. Ayman and I like reading in our free time. When we went there, we found our teacher of English. He was happy when he saw us and offered to help us. Really, it was a nice day.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. When they went to the library, they found the teacher of ................ .
   a) Arabic   b) English   c) science   d) maths
2. Their teacher offered to ................................................ them.
   a) borrow   b) speak   c) call   d) help
3. Exams finished a ................................................ ago.
   a) day   b) week   c) month   d) year

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. What place did the speaker recommend?

................................................................................................

5. Why would the speaker and Ayman go to the library on foot?

................................................................................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. catches - worm - the - early - The - bird - .

................................................................................................

2. Birds - together - flock - a - feather - of - .

................................................................................................

3. nests - don't - Singing - build - birds - .

................................................................................................

4. an - country - amazing - is - Egypt - .

................................................................................................

5. People - Sea - in - go - Red - can - snorkeling - the - .

................................................................................................

6. to - turtles - hope - and - see - lizards - We - .

................................................................................................

7. scare - mustn't - birds - the - You - .

................................................................................................

8. to - Egypt - and - birds - from - Many - migrate - .

................................................................................................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. You ............................................................ (mustn't) respect nature.
2. You ............................................................ (must) scare birds or animals.
3. If I am hungry, I ............................................................ (eat) a snack.
4. If Omar .............................. (play) football for two hours, he will be tired.
5. When we go camping, we ........................ (mustn't) take a tent with us.
6. If you learn to bake, you .................................... (save) a lot of money.
7. You mustn't ............................................ (leaves) trash on the beach.
8. If she feels thirsty, she ................................ (would) drink some water.
9. You mustn't ............................ (walking) in the desert when it is hot.
10. You ............................ (mustn't) be careful in the natural environment.

## 7 Punctuate the following.

- We re going on a tour
- you must study hard for exams

## 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Eco-tourism in Egypt

**Guiding elements:**

(historical - museums - sustainable - wildlife)

..........................................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................................

Bird migration

**Guiding elements:**

(migrate - winter - warmer - eagle)

..........................................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................................................

# Unit (11) How can I help?

## Vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| donate | يتبرع | participate | يشارك | support | يساند - يدعم |
| volunteer | يتطوع | help out | يساعد في | start up | يبدأ |
| jealous | غيور | multi-grip | مقبض متعدد الأغراض | install | يركب / يثبت |
| record | يسجل | reward | يكافيء / مكافأة | sparrow | عصفور |
| kind to | عطوف مع | look after | يعتني بـ | day center | مركز رعاية نهارية |
| confidence | ثقة | fundraising | جمع تبرعات | give back | يرد الجميل |
| grabber | أداة التقاط | handle | مقبض | film | يصور |
| socialize | يتواصل اجتماعيًا | nature camera | | | كاميرا لتصوير الطبيعة |

## Pronunciation

| sh /ʃ/ | | ch /tʃ/ | | tch /tʃ/ | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| shoe | فردة حذاء | rich | غني | watch | يشاهد |
| shop | محل | chop | يقطع | catch | يمسك |
| ship | سفينة | chip | رقاقة | kitchen | مطبخ |

## Language

### to + inf.

- نستخدم (to + inf) لبيان الغرض.

We wear gloves to protect our hands.

### Adverbs الظروف

- **An Adverb** is a word that describes a verb. (الحال / الظرف) هو كلمة تصف الفعل.

- يتكون الحال بإضافة "ly" إلى الصفة.

quick ⟶ quickly

- They walk quickly.

- هناك بعض الأحوال غير المنتظمة.

good ⟶ well    fast ⟶ fast    hard ⟶ hard

- He runs fast.    - She plays well.

# Activities on Unit (11)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ramses II was a great .................................................... King.
   a) Spanish b) French c) Egyptian d) American
2. His .................................................... is called Sethi.
   a) father b) uncle c) brother d) son
3. His father became the .................................................... of Egypt.
   a) minister b) merchant c) seller d) Pharaoh
4. His brother died when he was .................................................... years old.
   a) 11 b) 14 c) 18 d) 22

## Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I volunteer at a .................................................... for old people.
   a) hospital b) library c) day center d) school
2. Some old people .................................................... open glass bottles and jars.
   a) can b) may c) will d) can't
3. Their .................................................... aren't strong enough.
   a) hands b) eyes c) legs d) ears
4. They use a .................................................... to take off the tops.
   a) nature camera b) grabber c) multi-grip d) eraser

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. When people ............... , it makes them feel happy to help other people.
   a) socialize b) respect c) volunteer d) support
2. When you ..................... , you spend time with people in a friendly way.
   a) hate b) dislike c) take d) socialize
3. Animals need safe ........... where they can live, find food, and look after their babies.
   a) houses b) schools c) habitats d) trees
4. I am always kind .................................................... younger children.
   a) up b) to c) of d) out
5. My brother sometimes helps .................................................... at a day center.
   a) back b) after c) out d) up

6. It's very important to look ........................ your pets.
   a) to   b) of   c) on   d) after
7. Last year, we decided to ........................ up a free art club.
   a) begin   b) end   c) start   d) look
8. How can you ........................ back to your community?
   a) give   b) take   c) lend   d) borrow
9. We could ........................ money to charity.
   a) volunteer   b) participate   c) donate   d) talk
10. I ........................ my little brother.
   a) give up   b) look after   c) helps out   d) start up
11. Children who ........................ in a group activity usually have lots of fun!
   a) donate   b) look after   c) participate   d) volunteer
12. We ........................ to help in the community service project every year.
   a) run   b) volunteer   c) donate   d) close
13. A .................. is something you get for doing a good job or being helpful.
   a) sparrow   b) jealous   c) reward   d) award
14. " ......... " means feeling unhappy because someone has what you want.
   a) Jealous   b) Confidence   c) Happiness   d) Hatred

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**participating - nervous - donate - skills - sports**

I decided that I wanted to help children in my school. I love 1)........................, so I started an after-school club to teach the younger children football 2)........................ I was a bit 3)........................ at first, but lots of children joined in and their parents were very happy. It was great to have so many children 4)........................

## Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**pictures - painted - planted - sick - being**

My little sister was sick last month, and she was in the hospital. She's better now, but when we visited her, she was sad because she didn't like 1)........................ there. I thought it would be nice to do something for children who are 2)........................ My friends and I 3)........................ lots of big 4)........................ of flowers, animals, beaches, and trees.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Hi, I'm Tamer. At school, we started a project called Community Help. We all had to choose something we could do to support other people or things in our community. There were lots of ideas. For example, some people wanted to start a vegetable garden in the school to grow fresh fruit and vegetables. That was really popular. Other people volunteered to help clean trash from the river, so that animals' habitats are safer.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. We started a .................................................... called Community Help.
   a) lecture b) project c) test d) quiz
2. We want to help people or things in our .................................................... .
   a) school b) club c) community d) library
3. There were lots of .................................................... .
   a) ideas b) sugar c) flour d) candies

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. What does the underlined word "support" mean?

....................................................................................................

5. Why did people volunteer to help clean the trash?

....................................................................................................

## Read the text and answer the questions.

Have you ever had an idea for a new video game? Video games are not just for fun. They are big business. Creating one isn't simple. It can take years. It takes plenty of people, too! Some people work on programming the game. They build the game in a computer program. Others are artists. They draw the pictures for the game. But they don't use paper and pencil. They use a computer program. And there are people who work on the sounds you hear. It takes lots of teamwork.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The passage is about ....................................................
   a) teamwork b) programming c) computer program d) video games

2. Some people build the .................................. in a computer program.

a) game b) room c) box d) container

3. Video games are not just for ..................................................

a) gun b) bun c) fun d) sun

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. How long does it take to create a game?

..................................................................................................

5. What do the artists use to draw the pictures for a game?

..................................................................................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. charity - children's - a local - start up - We - to - decided - .

..................................................................................................

2. grow - to - want - people - some - did - What - ?

..................................................................................................

3. football - get - at - better - I - seeing - like - the children - .

..................................................................................................

4. animals - important - kind to - think - I - it's - to be - .

..................................................................................................

5. clean-up - a beach - a grabber - on - use - does - Anas - Why - ?

..................................................................................................

6. by bus - her cousins - see - Farah - to - traveled - .

..................................................................................................

7. some candy - bought - the movie - to - We - during - eat - .

..................................................................................................

8. lemonade - to - the market - in - They - sell - make - .

..................................................................................................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I bought a card to ........................ (sent) to my grandma.
2. Nesma wears sunglasses ........................ (for) protect her eyes.
3. My uncle went to Cairo to ........................ (visiting) a friend.
4. Mom is using an app to ........................ (learnt) French.
5. Rahma listens to music ........................ (for) help her relax.
6. I went to the sports center to ........................ (played) tennis.
7. She turned on the radio ........................ (for) listen to some songs.
8. He picked up the phone to ........................ (calling) his friend.
9. They open the fridge to ........................ (drank) cold water.
10. We wear gloves ........................ (for) protect our hands.

## 7 Punctuate the following.

- what are these buttons for
- you use this to swim under water

## 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Ways to be a good citizen

**Guiding elements:**

( Respect others - protect the environment )

........................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................

........................................................................................................................

A biography of a volunteer

**Guiding elements:**

- Fareeda Hassan
- Born in 1994.
- went to university in 2012.

........................................................................................................................

# Exam (1)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Amina liked .................................................................................. .
   a) **games** b) **sports** c) **films** d) **plays**
2. She loved games that used a lot of ..........................................................
   a) **information** b) **generation** c) **imagination** d) **foundation**
3. She had a doll's ........................................................................ .
   a) **house** b) **home** c) **flat** d) **yard**
4. She had some ........................................................................ figures.
   a) **act** b) **active** c) **activity** d) **action**

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The ................................................ is the person who tells you the story.
   a) **speaker** b) **moral** c) **narrator** d) **setting**
2. "The early bird catches the ................................................................."
   a) **turtle** b) **worm** c) **snake** d) **warm**
3. To take part in something means to ..........................................................
   a) **donate** b) **participate** c) **support** d) **volunteer**
4. They used a lot of ................................................ in Tutankhamun's tomb.
   a) **iron** b) **silver** c) **bronze** d) **gold**

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

path - interesting - number - lovely - playing

My friend Ali and I were 1) ...................... in the forest yesterday. It was a 2) ................ afternoon and the sun was shining. We were near my home, and we were hoping to see some 3) ................ animals and birds. We were walking along the 4) ................. when suddenly we saw a little house in the distance. "Let's go and look at the house," said Ali. I was a bit scared and didn't want to go, but I followed him.





## 4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They particularly adored cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them and kept them safe. They were also good pets because they cleaned themselves and kept the houses free of pests like rats and snakes. This was particularly important for farmers, who produced a lot of grain. The rats didn't eat the grain because the cats ate the rats!

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. The Ancient Egyptians loved ..............................
   a) **birds** b) **crocodiles** c) **animals** d) **snakes**
2. The underlined word "adored" means ..............................
   a) **loved** b) **hated** c) **disliked** d) **kept**
3. There was a .............................. in almost every house.
   a) **camel** b) **tiger** c) **leopard** d) **cat**

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. What's the main idea of the passage? ..............................
5. Why didn't the rats eat the grain? ..............................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. air - fresh - the - in - I - walking - like - . ..............................
2. figures - action - my - for - I - games - lots of - made up - . ..............................
3. the main - the villagers - character - Why - did - annoy - ? ..............................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. They were swimming when Tom ..............................(see) a glass bottle.
2. You ..............................(mustn't) respect nature.

## 7 Punctuate the following.

- i love visiting siwa. ..............................

## 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A blog about habitats

**Guiding elements:**

- What is a habitat? - What do animals need to live?

# Exam (2)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Proverbs have more than one .................................................
   a) ending  b) meaning  c) beginning  d) starting
2. This proverb tells us about a .................................................
   a) snake  b) crocodile  c) bird  d) hippo
3. You need to be the ............................................ to do something.
   a) second  b) fourth  c) tenth  d) first
4. If you want to be ..................................., you need to be the first.
   a) known  b) successful  c) loser  d) famous

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My uncle keeps ......................... on his roof. They're his favorite birds.
   a) pigeons  b) lions  c) tigers  d) leopards
2. Holidays for eco-tourists often have simple .................................
   a) volunteers  b) accommodation  c) meanings  d) sports
3. Children who ..................... in a group activity usually have lots of fun!
   a) volunteer  b) look after  c) donate  d) participate
4. On eco-tourism vacations, the most important thing is not to ...... nature.
   a) see  b) hurt  c) protect  d) look

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

culture - statues - text - artifacts - museum

Last summer, we went to a 1) ...................... in the city. There were so many interesting 2) ............... to see. My brother and I were walking around when we found a room that had lots of animal 3) ....................... The Ancient Egyptians made lots of animal statues, because animals were very important in their 4) ..................... First, we saw different statues in gold and silver. Then we saw some in clay, stone, and granite, too.

## Read the following text then answer the questions.

Hi, I'm Lara. We're going to have the chance to do some underwater photography on our vacation! We'll set off on a tour from the beach in small boats, and sail out to places where we can see many different kinds of fish. There are beautiful, bright-colored fish there, as well as coral reefs. The tour is only on Monday and Wednesday because this is a protected area, so there mustn't be too many trips.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. Lara is going to do some underwater ..........
   a) **photo** b) **photograph** c) **photography** d) **picture**
2. She'll set .......... in a small boat.
   a) **of** b) **off** c) **on** d) **back**
3. She wants to see different kinds of .......... .
   a) **lizards** b) **snakes** c) **hippos** d) **fish**

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. When is the tour? ..........
5. What is the main idea of the passage? ..........

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. of - flock - Birds - a feather - together - . ..........
2. Egypt - in - birds - of - There - species - 450 - over - are - . ..........
3. my boat - sailing - love - I - coast - on the - . ..........

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. The apple is ..........(on) front of the box.
2. This book is not funny ..........(quite).

## 7 Punctuate the following.

- skateboarding is quite good ..........

## 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Eco-tourism

**Guiding elements:**

(damage - sustainable - accommodation)

# Exam (3)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Ancient Egyptians kept animals as ..................................................... .
   a) **guards** b) **pets** c) **killers** d) **grain**
2. The Ancient Egyptians adored ..................................................... .
   a) **frogs** b) **lizards** c) **rats** d) **cats**
3. They believed that cats kept them ..................................................... .
   a) **angry** b) **dangerous** c) **safe** d) **sad**
4. The cats kept the houses free of ..................................................... .
   a) **lions** b) **pests** c) **pets** d) **tigers**

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. There are some wooden toys on the toy ..................................................... .
   a) **stall** b) **ship** c) **sky** d) **air**
2. The ..................................................... of the story is kindness is everything.
   a) **narrator** b) **setting** c) **moral** d) **characters**
3. If something is ....................................................., it happens and is true.
   a) **false** b) **careless** c) **sensible** d) **real**
4. " ..................................................... " means collecting money for a charity.
   a) **Snorkeling** b) **Fundraising** c) **Socialize** d) **Confidence**

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

teenagers - socialize - Volunteering - sky - charities

You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to 1) ................................ and talk to people you wouldn't usually meet. 2) ................................ also gives you confidence. It's amazing to see how 3) .................... grow in confidence when they start volunteering. Fundraising helps 4) .................... get the money they need.

## 4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

My grandfather is my hero. He was born in a village to a poor family in January 1952. But he worked hard at school and he went to the university. He was always interested in helping people and he became a doctor. I admire him because he has stopped working as a doctor, but he hasn't stopped helping people. He teaches in the village school. He has taught many children who are now at the university. When he was a doctor. he helped poor patients for free. Furthermore he gave them medicine without any money. He is really a great man.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. The underlined pronoun "he" refers to ................................................ .
   a) **uncle** b) **brother** c) **grandfather** d) **father**
2. The writer's grandfather worked as a ................................................ .
   a) **doctor** b) **pilot** c) **mechanic** d) **farmer**
3. The underlined word "admire" means the same as ................................... .
   a) **hate** b) **love** c) **order** d) **live**

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. Give a suitable title for the passage. ................................................
5. What was the writer's grandfather interested in? ....................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. by bus - her cousins - see - to - Farah - traveled - . ................................
2. country - an - amazing - Egypt - is - . ................................................
3. imagined - a - flying - Amal - plane - in - . ..........................................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Ghada and I ..................(play) computer games when Dad arrived home.
2. You ................................................(mustn't) respect nature.

## 7 Punctuate the following.

- we're going on a tour ................................................

## 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Iron in Ancient Egypt

**Guiding elements:**

**(meteorite - mined - melt)**

# Exam (4)

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Hugo lives in .................................................................................................
   a) **England** b) **Germany** c) **France** d) **Spain**
2. Hugo lives on the ...........................................................................................
   a) **mountain** b) **hill** c) **desert** d) **coast**
3. Hugo loves sailing his .....................................................................................
   a) **ship** b) **boat** c) **plane** d) **car**
4. The bottle traveled over ............................................................ kilometers.
   a) **60** b) **6** c) **6,000** d) **600**

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Ancient Egyptians ........................... cats. They loved them very much.
   a) **hated** b) **adored** c) **disliked** d) **lost**
2. My brother is really good at ............................................................ and seek.
   a) **go** b) **dive** c) **hide** d) **swim**
3. Many birds ........................................................ to find warmer weather in winter.
   a) **migrate** b) **swim** c) **dive** d) **sink**
4. The ........................................................ is the person who tells you the story.
   a) **ending** b) **narrator** c) **setting** d) **beginning**

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

famous - snorkel - fly - tourists - fantastic

The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a 1) ........................ area for locals and 2) ........................................ to visit. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is 3) ............................... for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to 4) ........................ and scuba dive here.





## 4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They particularly adored cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them and kept them safe. They were also good pets because they cleaned themselves and kept the houses free of pests like rats and snakes. This was particularly important for farmers, who produced a lot of grain. The rats didn't eat the grain because the cats ate the rats!

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. The Ancient Egyptians adored ........................................................
   a) **cats** b) **mice** c) **frogs** d) **insects**
2. Cats kept the houses free of ........................................................ .
   a) **dogs** b) **pests** c) **birds** d) **lions**
3. The Ancient Egyptians kept many animals as ........................................ .
   a) **pests** b) **insects** c) **killer** d) **pets**

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. Why were cats good pets? ........................................................
5. Why didn't the rats eat the grain? ........................................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. flowers - and - can - We - plants - grow - . ........................................................
2. What - mean - this - proverb - does - ? ........................................................
3. she - university - study - What - at - did - ? ........................................................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. ........................................................ (Do) you have a nice weekend last week?
2. If you learn to bake, you ........................................ (would) save a lot of money.

## 7 Punctuate the following.

- you mustn't leave trash on beaches ........................................................

## 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

My favorite game

**Guiding elements:**

**( games - hopscotch )**

# Exam (5)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Tom's .................................................. lived by the sea.
   a) **uncles** b) **grandparents** c) **aunts** d) **cousins**
2. The beach near their house was quiet and .................................. .
   a) **ugly** b) **dirty** c) **beautiful** d) **terrible**
3. They swam and .................................................. in the sea.
   a) **surfed** b) **served** c) **drove** d) **watched**
4. They played games on the .................................................. .
   a) **air** b) **smoke** c) **mountain** d) **sand**

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. " ........................ " means seeds from plants used to make flour and bread.
   a) **Sand** b) **Oil** c) **Grain** d) **Salt**
2. The .................................................. is London in 1965.
   a) **character** b) **setting** c) **moral** d) **narrator**
3. A .................................................. person tries hard not to make mistakes.
   a) **careless** b) **careful** c) **lazy** d) **mad**
4. I think it's very important to be kind .................................................. animals.
   a) **to** b) **at** c) **on** d) **in**

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

volunteered - support - garden - community - ocean

We started a project called Community Help. We all had to choose something we could do to 1) .............. other people or things in our 2) .............. . There were lots of ideas. For example, some people wanted to start a vegetable 3) .................... in the school to grow fresh fruit and vegetables. That was really popular. Other people 4) .............. to help clean trash from the river.





## 4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

The sun is the most important source of energy. Although we can't live without it, scientists tell us that the sun has advantages and disadvantages. On the one hand, sunshine is good for you as it gives you energy. It is good for plants. Many crops and fruits grow well in Egypt as it is sunny most of the year and it is not usually cold. Tourists like to come to Egypt because of the sunshine. On the other hand, it has some disadvantages as the sunshine can burn your skin. The sun can start fires. If it is very hot, some plants can't grow and it can be difficult to play sports.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. Although sunshine is very useful, scientists say that it has also .... effects.
   a) **good** b) **nice** c) **bad** d) **great**
2. One disadvantage of the sunshine is that it can .................... your skin.
   a) **burn** b) **benefit** c) **kill** d) **drive**
3. The underlined word "start" means .................................................. .
   a) **cause** b) **play** c) **sell** d) **buy**

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. Give a suitable title for the text? ..................................................
5. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to? ........................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. to - would - like - know - What - you - ? ..................................................
2. hurt - arm - I - over - and - fell - my - . ..................................................
3. He - playing - in - yesterday - the forest - was - morning - . ..............................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Ghada prefers ................................ (play) board games to skipping.
2. If we ............ (went) to El Agami beach this summer, I'll swim every day.

## 7 Punctuate the following.

- where did you go yesterday ..................................................

## 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:



A visit to the museum

**Guiding elements:**

**( artifacts - statues - gold )**



# Exam (6)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Next ................................................ , Nadia is going on a tour.
   a) day  b) week  c) month  d) night
2. They are going to see birds and animals which live near the ................ .
   a) trees  b) desert  c) sky  d) water
3. They are traveling along the river in small ................................ .
   a) cars  b) boats  c) planes  d) trains
4. They will bring their ................................................ .
   a) clothes  b) umbrellas  c) hats  d) cameras

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A ................................................ is the long nose of an elephant.
   a) button  b) sail  c) trunk  d) stall
2. The ................................................ is the lesson you learn from a story.
   a) moral  b) narrator  c) beginning  d) character
3. Eco-tourism is more ................................ than traditional tourism.
   a) dangerous  b) terrible  c) sustainable  d) horrible
4. " ................................ " means to spend time with people in a friendly way.
   a) Reply  b) Socialize  c) Fundraiser  d) Volunteer

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

help - hurt - shopping - sick - polite

There are a lot of ways you can volunteer to help your community. Be 1) ........................ and kind to your neighbors. Help people who are old or 2) ........................ . Call your neighbors to ask how you can 3) ........................ . You can offer to do their 4) ........................ or do jobs for them at home.

## 4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Egypt is an amazing country. There are many historical places to visit, as well as stores, markets, and museums. People can go snorkeling in the Red Sea, go on a desert safari, climb mountains, or sail on the Nile. So, tourism is important – but eco-tourism is becoming very popular, too. Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment. It's more sustainable than traditional tourism, and it is designed to protect nature. People stay in simple accommodation, not large hotels, and they mustn't travel in ways that cause lots of pollution.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. There are many .................................................. places to visit in Egypt.
   a) **ugly** b) **historical** c) **terrible** d) **bad**
2. People can go ................................................................ in the Red Sea.
   a) **camping** b) **shopping** c) **snorkeling** d) **driving**
3. The underlined word "popular" means ................................................... .
   a) **unknown** b) **dangerous** c) **famous** d) **ugly**

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. What is the main idea of the text? ........................................................
5. Why is eco-tourism designed? ..............................................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. want - game - a - play - Do - you - to - ? ..................................................
2. at - doing - We - a wildlife - school - project - are - . ...................................
3. Singing - nests - don't - birds - build - . ...................................................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. He ..............................................................(watch) TV when I called him.
2. We enjoy ...................................(make) up stories for our action figures.

## 7 Punctuate the following.

- ali didn't play with me ..........................................................................

## 8 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words about:

Your favorite hobby

**Guiding elements:**

**- Your name is Dalia** **- Your friend's name is Fareeda**

# Exam (7)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My favorite toy was my ..................................................

   a) **cuddly toy** b) **doll's house** c) **train set** d) **skateboard**

2. I loved going to the ........................................ and playing with my friends.

   a) **zoo** b) **park** c) **river** d) **sea**

3. We all wanted to go so ..................................................

   a) **fast** b) **slow** c) **bad** d) **worse**

4. My skateboard was ..................................................

   a) **green** b) **yellow** c) **black** d) **blue**

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A ...................... is an object made of stone to look like a person or animal.

   a) **statue** b) **box** c) **baboon** d) **triangle**

2. The main ................................................... was a bit boring. I didn't like him.

   a) **moral** b) **setting** c) **character** d) **ending**

3. It is very important to look ...................................................... your pets.

   a) **out** b) **after** c) **up** d) **down**

4. We ............................ to help in the Community Service project every year.

   a) **scare** b) **frighten** c) **damage** d) **volunteer**

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

wisdom - afterlife - mummified - ibis - cow

The Ancient Egyptians loved birds. They loved falcons and the 1) .............. , which represented 2) .......... . There are thousands of 3) ................ ibises in Saqqara alone. All these pets were important for the Ancient Egyptians' everyday life - they were also important in the 4) ..................



## 4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Many people are starting to visit Egypt for wildlife and bird-watching. There are lots of interesting birds to see here. Many kinds of birds migrate - they must fly to different countries at certain times of year, to find food, make nests, or have warmer weather. The birds often must fly very long distances, and lots of their journeys go over Egypt, because it is in North Africa and close to Asia and Europe. There are over 450 species of birds in Egypt, and people come from all over the world on vacations to see them. For example, Siwa Oasis is a fantastic place to see many migrating water birds. It is an important habitat and people must protect it.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to ..........................
   a) **Egypt** b) **North Africa** c) **Siwa Oasis** d) **birds**
2. The text is about ..........................
   a) **Europe** b) **Africa** c) **bird migration** d) **weather**
3. There are over .......................... species of birds in Egypt.
   a) **300** b) **350** c) **450** d) **400**

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. Why do birds migrate to Egypt? ..........................
5. Why must birds often fly very long distances over Egypt? ..........................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. wanted - in - help - to - I - school - my - children - . ..........................
2. games - love - I - kinds - playing - of - all - . ..........................
3. Where - silver - find - did - they - the - ? ..........................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets

1. I think hopscotch is .......................... (at all) good
2. If you go to bed late, you .......................... (would) not get up early

## 7 Punctuate the following.

- egypt is in North africa. ..........................



## 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Cats in Ancient Egypt

**Guiding elements:**

(adored - safe - pests - grain)

# Exam (8)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The two brothers were very .................................................... .
   a) alike b) different c) similar d) the same
2. The older brother was the .................................................... man in the village.
   a) biggest b) smallest c) richest d) poorest
3. The older brother always wanted .................................................... money.
   a) less b) few c) little d) more
4. The younger brother wasn't .................................................... .
   a) rich b) poor c) happy d) young

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We .................................................... money to charities.
   a) borrow b) donate c) damage d) kill
2. "...................................." means using knowledge to make good decisions.
   a) Wisdom b) Statue c) Hopscotch d) Happiness
3. When people .................................... the environment, they want to protect it.
   a) migrate b) close c) respect d) damage
4. To .................................................... is to take part in something.
   a) donate b) participate c) leave d) break

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

stories - out - too - reading - diving

My name is Reem. I love reading. I decided to help 1) .................... the kindergarten class on a Thursday by 2) .................... to the children. I love reading 3) .................... with the younger children, and they like it ....................

## 4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba dive here. You can see coral reefs and lots of brightly-colored fish, and maybe sharks. There is lots of other wildlife, too, and it is a great place for bird-watching. The National Park is protected, but people are allowed to visit. Because it is so beautiful, lots of visitors come and ride boats, or swim and snorkel in the sea.

### A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The Sinai Peninsula is famous for its .................................................. life.
   a) **river** b) **ocean** c) **sky** d) **sea**
2. You can see coral .................................................. and lots of colored fish.
   a) **roofs** b) **reefs** c) **rooms** d) **tops**
3. It is a great place for .................................................. -watching.
   a) **bird** b) **tree** c) **flower** d) **monkey**

### B) Answer the following questions.

4. What do people do in Ras Mohammed Park? ..................................................
5. What is the main idea of the text? ..................................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. migrate - weather - find - to - Birds - warmer - . ..................................................
2. Ramy - playing - Fares - hopscotch - were - and - . ..................................................
3. find - the - they - message - How - did - ? ..................................................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Were you looking at your phone when I ..................................................(see) you?
2. They finished .................................................. (paint) the posters and tidied up.

## 7 Punctuate the following.

- where did you go on holiday ..................................................

## 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Eco-tourism

**Guiding elements:**

**( popular - sustainable - protect - accommodation )**

# Exam (9)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ramses II was a great Egyptian .................................................................
   a) Queen  b) King  c) Teacher  d) Doctor
2. His father was the ................................................................ of Egypt.
   a) Pharaoh  b) Engineer  c) Pilot  d) Sailor
3. Young Rames helped his father .................................................... the country.
   a) fix  b) damage  c) paint  d) rule
4. Ramses became the leader of the Egyptian ........................................ .
   a) ships  b) boats  c) armies  d) skies

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You can go quite fast on ................................................................ .
   a) hopscotch  b) rollerblades  c) cuddly toy  d) a goat
2. The ................................................................ is the last part of a story.
   a) setting  b) beginning  c) ending  d) narrator
3. When two things are ........, they might look the same or do the same things.
   a) real  b) different  c) various  d) similar
4. The older brother was ................ . He wanted to take his brother's money.
   a) jealous  b) kind  c) good  d) friendly

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

fresh - Help - hate - vegetable - support

At school, we started a project called Community 1) ...................... We all had to choose something we could do to 2) ...................... other people or things in our community. There were lots of ideas. For example, some people wanted to start a 3) ...................... garden in the school to grow 4) ...................... fruit and vegetables.

## 4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it, because of its place in the world. North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. This means that lots of interesting birds migrate to Egypt, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts. Many water birds migrate to Egypt, too. You can often see large flocks of birds such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean coasts, as well as on the Nile. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. North Africa is ............................................ than Europe.
   a) **colder** b) **freezer** c) **hotter** d) **calmer**
2. Eagles, ............................................ , and swifts are interesting birds.
   a) **falcons** b) **cows** c) **horses** d) **elephants**
3. These birds often eat ............................................ or plants.
   a) **water** b) **fish** c) **lions** d) **cats**

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. What birds can you see in Lake Qarun? ............................................
5. Why do many birds migrate to and from Egypt? ............................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. loved - and - birds - The - Egyptians - Ancient - animals - . ..............................
2. The - shelves - books - on - the - are - . ..............................
3. snorkeling - can - People - Red - the - go - Sea - in - . ..............................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. You ............................................(must) walk in the desert when it's hot.
2. My sister stopped ............................................ (let) me share her doll's house.

## 7 Punctuate the following.

- who did they play with ............................................

## 8 Write a blog of FIFTY (50) words about:

Protecting animals

**Guiding elements:**

**( habitats - preserve )**

# Exam (10)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Ras Mohammed National .................... is on the Red Sea.
   a) **River** b) **Park** c) **Lake** d) **Ocean**
2. It is a .................... area for locals and tourists to visit.
   a) **fantastic** b) **bad** c) **sad** d) **terrible**
3. The Sinai .................... is famous for its sea life and warm water.
   a) **River** b) **Peninsula** c) **Lake** d) **Sea**
4. People come from all over the world to .................... and scuba dive.
   a) **sleep** b) **fly** c) **snorkel** d) **drive**

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. " .................... " means to be more successful than someone in a game.
   a) **Beat** b) **Score** c) **Make** d) **Act**
2. I like making up stories for my .................... figures.
   a) **stall** b) **action** c) **hide** d) **seek**
3. A .................... person tries hard not to make mistakes.
   a) **careless** b) **lazy** c) **careful** d) **ugly**
4. We should .................... nature.
   a) **respect** b) **damage** c) **destroy** d) **kill**

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

difficult - stores - after - shopping - younger

My neighbor has always been kind to us. She used to help my mom look 1) .................... me when I was younger. Now she's getting a bit older, and it's sometimes 2) .................... for her to go 3) .................... . So I ask her what she needs, then I go to the 4) .................... and get it. I like to help her.

## 4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Last summer, my cousin Sami came to Cairo for the first time. He's 28 and he lives in London. He's an architect and he was visiting Cairo for his job. We went to the shopping centre and the sports centre. On Saturday, we went to Khan al-Khalili, a big market in the centre of Cairo. Hundreds of people come to the market from all over the city. We went early in the morning because it's quieter then. A lot of tourists visit in the afternoon, so it is busier.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. My uncle Sami is ............................................ years old.
   a) twenty b) twenty-eight c) eighty-two d) thirty
2. The underlined word "summer" is a ............................................
   a) sport b) food c) subject d) season
3. In the ............................................ a lot of tourists visit Khan al-Khalili.
   a) Saturday b) London c) afternoon d) morning

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. What's the main idea of the text? ............................................
5. Why did they go to Khan al-Khalili early in the morning? ............................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. playing - park - were - in - We - the - . ............................................
2. Red - go - in - Sea - We - snorkeling - the - . ............................................
3. Who - help - want - Tamer - did - to - ? ............................................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Dalia was late, so she ran to school very ............................................ (quick).
2. I ............................................ (watch) a film when you called me.

## 7 Punctuate the following.

- what are your favorite things ............................................

## 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Your favorite games

**Guiding elements:**

**( video games - creative )**

# Exam (11)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My favorite artifact was a small ............................................................
   a) snake b) monkey c) eagle d) falcon
2. My brother liked a gold falcon with ........................................ glass eyes.
   a) green b) blue c) red d) yellow
3. There were lots of cats made of brightly-colored ..................................
   a) metal b) glass c) stone d) sand
4. The Ancient Egyptians adored ..............................................................
   a) donkeys b) horses c) cows d) cats

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. To ...... means to cover in oils and cloth to preserve for a very long time.
   a) adore b) mummify c) succeed d) keep
2. You can go quite fast on ..........................................................................
   a) stall b) cuddly c) action d) rollerblades
3. My granddad is a good ........................................ . He tells us fine stories.
   a) narrator b) doctor c) cook d) player
4. Your news is always ........................................ . It happens and is true.
   a) unreal b) real c) wrong d) false

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

Modern - protect - copper - Ancient - three

There scarab amulet is from 1) ........................ Egypt and it is more than 2) .................... thousand years old. It is made of 3) ....................... . People wore jewelry with the image of a scarab to 4) ........................ them and bring them good fortune.





## 4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Atemu loved birds. Every day, birds came into his yard, and Atemu gave them grain. His sister's cat watched the birds, too, but it never caught them. One day, Atemu heard a strange noise in the sky. A lot of birds were flying into a field near his home. Atemu went to the field and threw grain to the birds. The birds ate the grain and then flew away. But one bird was different. It stayed on the ground.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. Atemu gave the birds .................................................... .
   a) **grain** b) **fields** c) **fruit** d) **vegetables**
2. The underlined word "near" is the same meaning as ....................
   a) **far** b) **away** c) **close** d) **outside**
3. His sister's cat caught ....................................................
   a) **a bird** b) **two birds** c) **all the birds** d) **no birds**

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. Where did the different bird stay? ....................................
5. What animal did Atemu's sister have? ....................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. character - a bit - was - boring - The main - . ..............................
2. the park - were - in - 5 pm - We - playing - at - yesterday - . ..............................
3. hopscotch - really - good - My brother - at - is - . ..............................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I enjoy .................................................... (look) at the market stall.
2. He .................................................... (quick) did his homework.

## 7 Punctuate the following.

- do you like eco-tourism ....................................................

## 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Your favorite toy

**Guiding elements:**

(skateboard - park - fast - helmet)

# Exam (12)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I love going on ..............................
   a) **holiday** b) **vacation** c) **schools** d) **market**
2. We learned about eco-tourism in .............................. today.
   a) **science** b) **history** c) **geography** d) **English**
3. You .............................. throw litter on beaches.
   a) **must** b) **mustn't** c) **can** d) **should**
4. I love watching .............................. and other animals.
   a) **matches** b) **beaches** c) **insects** d) **birds**

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The most important thing is not to .............................. nature.
   a) **see** b) **protect** c) **like** d) **hurt**
2. My sister is really good at hide and .............................. .
   a) **steak** b) **soak** c) **seek** d) **stall**
3. Some of the Ancient Egyptians' early iron was from .............................. .
   a) **meteorites** b) **daggers** c) **artifacts** d) **tombs**
4. Did you .............................. on the new rollerblades?
   a) **throw** b) **have a go** c) **beat** d) **make up**

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

plant - planet - safe - babies - protect

I think we should all try to **1)** .............................. animal habitats. Animals need **2)** .............................. places to live, find food, and look after their **3)** ............................... They are part of our **4)** .............................., so we must make sure that the things we do don't hurt them.



## 4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Many people visit Egypt for wildlife and bird-watching. There are lots of interesting birds to see here. Many kinds of birds migrate – they must fly to different countries at certain times of year, to find food, make nests, or have warmer weather. The birds often must fly very long distances, and lots of their journeys go over Egypt, because it is in North Africa and close to Asia and Europe. There are over 450 species of birds in Egypt, and people come from all over the world on vacations to see them. For example, Siwa Oasis is a fantastic place to see many migrating water birds. It is an important habitat and people must protect it.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. The opposite of the word "North" is ............................................ .
   a) East b) West c) Northern d) South
2. Many birds fly to different countries for ............................................ weather.
   a) warmer b) hotter c) colder d) rainy
3. The word "protect" means not to ............................................ the habitat.
   a) stop b) keep c) preserve d) hurt

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. Why do many people visit Egypt? ............................................
5. How many species of birds are there in Egypt? ............................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. am - kind - to - children - I - always - younger - . ............................................
2. you - back - give - What - can - community - to your - ? ............................................
3. I - to - sports - center - the - went - yesterday - . ............................................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. We wear gloves ............................................ (protect) our hands.
2. Yesterday afternoon, Ali ............................................ (walk) his dog.

## 7 Punctuate the following.

- the cat is in the box ............................................

## 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A trip to the Red Sea

**Guiding elements:**

(fantastic - tourists - snorkel - coral reefs)

# Exam (13)

خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف

## 1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

**are - What - interesting - artifacts - bus**

Mom : We are going to the museum tomorrow.

Sarah: Great! 1) .................................... can we see there?

Mom : There are a lot of 2) .................................... .

Sarah: That's 3) .................... ! How 4) .................... we going there?

Mom : We're going by 5) .................................... .

## 2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | glass | book | gold | silver | (..................) |
| 2. | love | needed | played | liked | (..................) |
| 3. | on | under | why | in | (..................) |
| 4. | character | ending | narrator | shopping | (..................) |
| 5. | boat | sun | car | bicycle | (..................) |

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The early .................................... catches the worm.
   a) **cat** b) **bird** c) **fish** d) **lion**
2. My sister had some action .................................... .
   a) **fingers** b) **pencils** c) **figures** d) **dolls**
3. Children can .................................... to help their community.
   a) **play** b) **volunteer** c) **swim** d) **help**
4. There are some wooden toys on the toy .................................... .
   a) **stall** b) **steel** c) **sail** d) **bank**
5. Many birds .................................... in winter to find warmer weather.
   a) **travel** b) **swim** c) **migrate** d) **flock**
6. Omar .................................... enjoys playing marbles.
   a) **really** b) **very** c) **so** d) **at all**
7. The cat is .................................... the table.
   a) **in** b) **next** c) **front** d) **under**
8. I .................................... a book when my dad came.
   a) **read** b) **was reading** c) **am reading** d) **reads**

9. If you .................................................. by train, you'll relax.
   a) **travels** b) **traveled** c) **travel** d) **will travel**
10. You must .................................................. nature.
   a) **respect** b) **respected** c) **respects** d) **to respect**

## 4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions.

My friend Ali and I were playing in the forest yesterday. It was a lovely afternoon and the sun was shining. We were near my home, and we were hoping to see some interesting animals and birds. We were walking along the path when suddenly we saw a little house in the distance. "Let's go and look at the house," said Ali. I was a bit scared and didn't want to go, but I followed him.

**A) Answer the following questions.**

1. What were you doing yesterday? ..................................................
2. Where were you walking? ..................................................
3. How did you feel when you saw the house? ..................................................

**B) Choose the correct answer.**

4. The weather was .................................................. in the afternoon.
   a) **cold** b) **rainy** c) **lovely** d) **windy**
5. The word "little" means .................................................. .
   a) **big** b) **small** c) **fat** d) **long**

## 5 Reorder the following words to make correct sentences.

1. was - like - What - weather - the - ? ..................................................
2. favorite - game - hopscotch - My - is - . ..................................................
3. This - pear - delicious - looks - . ..................................................
4. stopped - with - I - my - playing - train set - . ..................................................
5. made - The picture - papyrus - is - of - . ..................................................

## 6 Write a paragraph of (5) sentences on:

Your visit to the museum

**Guiding words:**

**(Last week - family - guide - artifacts - fascinating)**

# Exam (14)

خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف

## 1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

part - is- play - When - controller

Huda : Hi, Mona. Is this your new games console?

Mona: Yes, it 1) ................................................ .

Huda : 2) ................................................ did you get it?

Mona: I got it last week.

Huda : What is this 3) ................................................ for?

Mona: That's the 4) .................... . I use it to 5) .................... the game.

## 2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | doll's house | train set | bus | skateboard | (..........) |
| 2. | baboon | plane | crocodile | falcon | (..........) |
| 3. | swim | went | bought | saw | (..........) |
| 4. | on | in | under | where | (..........) |
| 5. | First | before | Next | After that | (..........) |

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The ................................ is the person who tells the story.
   a) **teacher** b) **narrator** c) **setting** d) **ending**
2. A ................................ person tries hard not to make mistakes.
   a) **lazy** b) **kind** c) **careful** d) **careless**
3. I'd love to have a ................................ on my skateboard.
   a) **take** b) **go** c) **play** d) **watch**
4. Gold is a ................................ .
   a) **subject** b) **color** c) **metal** d) **story**
5. You can volunteer on a local ................................ to help.
   a) **sea** b) **river** c) **charity** d) **cinema**
6. Gameela ................................ picked up the cat.
   a) **gently** b) **gentle** c) **quick** d) **good**
7. You ................................ leave trash on beaches.
   a) **must** b) **should** c) **can** d) **mustn't**
8. If you get up early, you ................................ the bus.
   a) **catches** b) **will catch** c) **catch** d) **caught**

9. They ............................................................ football yesterday morning.
   a) **play** b) **played** c) **were playing** d) **are playing**

10. I enjoyed ............................................................ adventure books.
   a) **read** b) **reading** c) **to read** d) **reads**

## 4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions.

My little sister was sick last month, and she was in the hospital. She's better now, but when we visited her, she was sad because she didn't like being there. I thought it would be nice to do something for children who are sick. My friends and I painted lots of big pictures of flowers, animals, beaches, and trees. Our parents donated lots of toys too. We took these and the paintings to the hospital to make the rooms look nicer.

**A) Answer the following questions.**

1. Where was your little sister last month? ..............................
2. Why was she sad? ..............................
3. Who donated lots of toys? ..............................

**B) Choose the correct answer.**

4. We painted a lot of ..............................
   a) **photos** b) **pictures** c) **books** d) **toys**
5. We wanted to make the .............................. look nicer.
   a) **rooms** b) **classes** c) **pictures** d) **parks**

## 5 Reorder the following words to make correct sentences.

1. board games - like - really - playing - I - . ..............................
2. were - good - What - you - at - ? ..............................
3. My - lived - sea - by - grandparents - the - . ..............................
4. build - nests - Singing - don't - birds - . ..............................
5. wear - hands - gloves - to protect - We - our - . ..............................

## 6 Write a paragraph of (5) sentences on:

Your favorite toy

**Guiding words:**

**(doll's house - stories - share - sister - play)**

# Listening Texts

## Unit (7)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

The Ancient Egyptians loved birds too, especially falcons and the ibis, which represented wisdom. There are thousands of mummified ibises in Saqqara alone. These pets were also important in the afterlife. It is therefore common to find mummified pets and statues of animals in the tombs.

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

One of the most beautiful artifacts from Ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's mask, which was found in his tomb. The mask is gold, with blue lines between gold lines. Under his chin is a thin beard. There is also a snake on the top of his head.

## Unit (8)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

When I was younger, my favorite toy was my skateboard. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends. They had a skateboard, too, and it was really good fun. We all wanted to go so fast! My skateboard had black, with orange and yellow stickers on it. I had to wear a helmet and pads. It really hurts if you fall off the skateboard!

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Last week, I visited my grandpa. I found a box of my old toys. I loved my rollerblades. I could go really fast on them. I found my sister's doll's house. We both played with it. I enjoyed playing with my skateboard, too.

## Unit (9)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

My friend Ali and I were playing in the forest yesterday. It was a lovely afternoon and the sun was shining. We were near my home, and we were hoping to see some interesting animals and birds. We were walking along the path when suddenly we saw a little house in the distance.

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Tom's grandparents lived by the sea. The beach near their house was quiet and beautiful, and he loved to go there with them. They swam, surfed and played games on the sand.

One day, they were swimming in the sea when Tom saw a glass bottle in the water.

## Unit (10)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba dive here. You can see coral reefs and lots of brightly-colored fish and maybe sharks.

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Next week Fares is going on a tour to see some beautiful birds. He will visit quiet beaches on a small bus, to see how many different kinds of birds. The sea in this area is a very popular place for birds to find food, so it will be a busy day.

## Unit (11)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Ramses II was a great Egyptian King. When he was about 5 years old, his father Sethi became the Pharaoh of Egypt. Then, when he was around 14, Ramses' older brother died. This meant Ramses would now be the next Pharaoh.

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I volunteer at a day center for old people. Some old people can't open glass bottles and jars. Their hands aren't strong enough. So they use a multi-grip to take off the tops. This is how you use it. Hold the jar with one hand and put this on the top. Hold this part with your other hand, and then turn it around. It's really easy to use. I love showing this to the people at the day center.

## Exam (1)

-) Listen and circle the correct answer.

When Amina was little, she really liked games that used a lot of imagination. She was very good at making up stories. She had a doll's house, some cuddly toys, and some action figures.

## Exam (2)

-) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Proverbs have more than one meaning. The early bird catches the worm. This proverb tells us that a bird that is early, or the first to try to catch a worm, usually catches it. So, it also means that to be successful, you need to be the first to do something.

## Exam (3)

The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They particularly adored cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them and kept them safe. They were also good pets because they cleaned themselves and kept the houses free of pests like rats and snakes.

## Exam (4)

My name is Hugo and I live in Biarritz, France. I live on the coast and I love sailing my boat. Last week, I was sailing when I saw something in the water – your message in a bottle! This means it traveled over 6,000 kilometers.

## Exam (5)

-) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Tom's grandparents lived by the sea. The beach near their house was quiet and beautiful, and he loved to go there with them. They swam, surfed, and played games on the sand.

## Exam (6)

-) Listen and circle the correct answer

Hi, I'm Nadia. Next month, we're going on a tour to see the birds and animals which live near the water. We'll travel along the river in small boats, and camp in tents at night. We'll bring our cameras, because we'll see some amazing things.

## Exam (7)

-) Listen and circle the correct answer

When I was younger, my favorite toy was my skateboard. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends. They had skateboards, too, and it was really good fun. We all wanted to go so fast! My skateboard was black.

## Exam (8)

-) Listen and circle the correct answer

Once, there were two brothers who were very different. The older brother was the richest man in the village. He was rich, but he always wanted more money. The younger brother wasn't rich, but he was kind and shared what he had with his friends.

## Exam (9)

-) Listen and circle the correct answer

· Ramses II was a great Egyptian King. When he was very young, his father Sethi became the Pharaoh of Egypt. Later on, when he was around 10, young Ramses helped his father rule the country. By the time he was 20 years old, Ramses was a great soldier. In 1290 BCE, he became Pharaoh and leader of the Egyptian armies.

## Exam (10)

-) Listen and circle the correct answer.

The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba dive here.

## Exam (11)

-) Listen and circle the correct answer

My favorite artifact was a small snake made of metal. My brother liked a gold falcon with blue glass eyes. There were lots of cats made of brightly colored stone, too. The Ancient Egyptians adored cats. They believed that cats kept them safe.

## Exam (12)

-) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I love going on vacation, but I think eco-tourism is a more sustainable way to travel. We learned about it in geography today and our teacher explained it really well. For example, you mustn't throw litter on beaches because this can make animals sick. I love watching birds and other animals